US Army Corps of Engineers®
Portland District

TDA AWS Backup Debris Management Project

THE DALLES DAM, OREGON

90% Specifications Submittal
Contract No. W912EF24D0002
Delivery Order No. W9127N24F0034
Baird-Stantec Joint Venture

Baird. Joint Venture Stantec

March 2025

PROJECT TABLE OF CONTENTS

-- End of Project Table of Contents --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01 33 00

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

08/18, CHG 4: 02/21

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01 33 00

SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
08/18, CHG 4: 02/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

1.1.1 Submittal Information

The Contracting Officer may request submittals in addition to those specified when deemed necessary to adequately describe the work covered in the respective sections. Each submittal is to be complete and in sufficient detail to allow ready determination of compliance with contract requirements.

Units of weights and measures used on all submittals are to be the same as those used in the contract drawings.

1.1.2 Project Type

The Contractor's Quality Control (CQC) System Manager are to check and approve all items before submittal and stamp, sign, and date indicating action taken. Proposed deviations from the contract requirements are to be clearly identified. Include within submittals items such as: Contractor's, manufacturer's, or fabricator's drawings; descriptive literature including (but not limited to) catalog cuts, diagrams, operating charts or curves; test reports; test cylinders; samples; O&M manuals (including parts list); certifications; warranties; and other such required submittals.

The Contractor and the Designer of Record (DOR), if applicable, are to check and approve all items before submittal and stamp, sign, and date indicating action taken. Proposed deviations from the contract requirements are to be clearly identified. Include within submittals items such as: Contractor's, manufacturer's, or fabricator's drawings; descriptive literature including (but not limited to) catalog cuts, diagrams, operating charts or curves; test reports; test cylinders; samples; O&M manuals (including parts list); certifications; warranties; and other such required submittals.

1.1.3 Submission of Submittals

Schedule and provide submittals requiring Government approval before acquiring the material or equipment covered thereby. Pick up and dispose of samples not incorporated into the work in accordance with manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets (SDS) and in compliance with existing laws and regulations.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Submittal Descriptions (SD)

Submittal requirements are specified in the technical sections. Examples and descriptions of submittals identified by the Submittal Description (SD) numbers and titles follow:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Submittals that are required prior to or commencing with the start of work on site. Submittals that are required prior to or at the start of construction (work) or the next major phase of the construction on a multiphase contract.

[Government approved Division 01 preconstruction submittals that are required prior to or commencing with the start of work must be submitted within 30 calendar days of contract award unless specified elsewhere in the specifications. Contractor approved Division 01 submittals that are required prior to or commencing with the start of work must be submitted within 45 calendar days of contract award unless specified elsewhere in the specifications.]

Preconstruction Submittals include schedules and a tabular list of locations, features, and other pertinent information regarding products, materials, equipment, or components to be used in the work.

Certificates Of Insurance

Surety Bonds

List Of Proposed Subcontractors

List Of Proposed Products

Baseline Network Analysis Schedule (NAS)

Submittal Register

Schedule Of Prices Or Earned Value Report

Accident Prevention Plan

Work Plan

Quality Control (QC) plan

Environmental Protection Plan [Explosive Safety Submission ESS Work Plan]

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Drawings, diagrams and schedules specifically prepared to illustrate some portion of the work.

Diagrams and instructions from a manufacturer or fabricator for use in producing the product and as aids to the Contractor for integrating the product or system into the project.

Drawings prepared by or for the Contractor to show how multiple systems and interdisciplinary work will be coordinated.

SD-03 Product Data

Catalog cuts, illustrations, schedules, diagrams, performance charts, instructions and brochures illustrating size, physical appearance and

other characteristics of materials, systems or equipment for some portion of the work.

Samples of warranty language when the contract requires extended product warranties.

SD-04 Samples

Fabricated or unfabricated physical examples of materials, equipment or workmanship that illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of a material or product and establish standards by which the work can be judged.

Color samples from the manufacturer's standard line (or custom color samples if specified) to be used in selecting or approving colors for the project.

Field samples and mock-ups constructed on the project site establish standards ensuring work can be judged. Includes assemblies or portions of assemblies that are to be incorporated into the project and those that will be removed at conclusion of the work.

SD-05 Design Data

Design calculations, mix designs, analyses or other data pertaining to a part of work.

Design submittals, design substantiation submittals and extensions of design submittals.

SD-06 Test Reports

Report signed by authorized official of testing laboratory that a material, product or system identical to the material, product or system to be provided has been tested in accord with specified requirements. Unless specified in another section, testing must have been within three years of date of contract award for the project.

Report that includes findings of a test required to be performed on an actual portion of the work or prototype prepared for the project before shipment to job site.

Report that includes finding of a test made at the job site or on sample taken from the job site, on portion of work during or after installation.

Investigation reports

Daily logs and checklists

Final acceptance test and operational test procedure

SD-07 Certificates

Statements printed on the manufacturer's letterhead and signed by responsible officials of manufacturer of product, system or material attesting that the product, system, or material meets specification requirements. Must be dated after award of project contract and clearly name the project.

Document required of Contractor, or of a manufacturer, supplier, installer or Subcontractor through Contractor. The document purpose is to further promote the orderly progression of a portion of the work by documenting procedures, acceptability of methods, or personnel qualifications.

Confined space entry permits

Text of posted operating instructions

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Preprinted material describing installation of a product, system or material, including special notices and Safety Data Sheets(SDS)concerning impedances, hazards and safety precautions.

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Data provided by the manufacturer, or the system provider, including manufacturer's help and product line documentation, necessary to maintain and install equipment, for operating and maintenance use by facility personnel.

Data required by operating and maintenance personnel for the safe and efficient operation, maintenance and repair of the item.

Data incorporated in an operations and maintenance manual or control system.

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Documentation to record compliance with technical or administrative requirements or to establish an administrative mechanism.

Submittals required for Guiding Principle Validation (GPV) or Third Party Certification (TPC).

Special requirements necessary to properly close out a construction contract. For example, Record Drawings and as-built drawings. Also, submittal requirements necessary to properly close out a major phase of construction on a multi-phase contract.

1.2.2 Approving Authority

Office or designated person authorized to approve the submittal.

1.2.3 Work

As used in this section, on-site and off-site construction required by contract documents, including labor necessary to produce submittals, construction, materials, products, equipment, and systems incorporated or to be incorporated in such construction. In exception, excludes work to produce SD-01 submittals.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for

Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Submittal Register; G

1.4 SUBMITTAL CLASSIFICATION

1.4.1 Government Approved (G)

Government approval is required for extensions of design, critical materials, variations, equipment whose compatibility with the entire system must be checked, and other items as designated by the Government.

Government approval is required for any variations from the Solicitation or the Accepted Proposal and for other items as designated by the Government.

Within the terms of the Contract Clause SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION, submittals are considered to be "shop drawings."

1.4.2 Design-Build Submittal Classifications

1.4.2.1 Designer of Record Approved (DA)

Designer of Record (DOR) approval is required for extensions of design; critical materials; any variations from the Solicitation, the Accepted Proposal, or the completed design; equipment whose compatibility with the entire system must be checked; and other items as designated by the Contracting Officer. Provide the Government with the number of copies designated hereinafter of all DOR approved submittals. The Government may review any or all Designer of Record approved submittals for conformance with the Solicitation, the Accepted Proposal, and the completed design. The Government will review all submittals designated as varying from the Solicitation or Accepted Proposal, as described below. Provide design submittals in accordance with Section 01 33 16.00 10 DESIGN DATA (DESIGN AFTER AWARD). Generally, list design submittals under SD-05 Design Data.

1.4.2.2 Government Conformance Review of Design (CR)

The Government will review all intermediate and final design submittals for conformance with the technical requirements of the Solicitation. Section 01 33 16.00 10 DESIGN DATA (DESIGN AFTER AWARD) covers the design submittal and review process in detail. Review will be only for conformance with the applicable codes, standards, and contract requirements. Design data includes the design documents described in Section 01 33 16.00 10 DESIGN DATA (DESIGN AFTER AWARD).

1.4.2.3 Designer of Record Approved/Government Conformance Review (DA/CR)

1.4.2.3.1 Variations from the Accepted Design

DOR approval and the Government's concurrence are required for any proposed variation from the accepted design that still complies with the contract before the Contractor is authorized to proceed with material

acquisition or installation. If necessary to facilitate the project schedule, before official submission to the Government, the Contractor and the DOR may discuss with the Contracting Officer's Representative a submittal proposing a variation. However, the Government reserves the right to review the submittal before providing an opinion. In any case, the Government will not formally agree to or provide a preliminary opinion on any variation without the DOR's approval or recommended approval. The Government reserves the right to reject any design, variation that may affect furniture, furnishings, equipment selections, or operational decisions that were made, based on the reviewed and concurred design.

1.4.2.3.2 Substitutions

Unless prohibited or otherwise provided for elsewhere in the contract, where the Accepted Proposal named products, systems, materials or equipment by manufacturer, brand name, model number, or other specific identification, and the Contractor desires to substitute a manufacturer or model after award, submit a requested substitution for Government concurrence. Include substantiation, through identifying information and the DOR's approval, that the substitute meets the contract requirements and that it is equal in function, performance, quality, and salient features to that in the accepted contract proposal. If the contract otherwise prohibits substitutions of equal named products, systems, materials or equipment by manufacturer, brand name, model number or other specific identification, the request is considered a "variation" to the contract. Variations are discussed below in paragraphs: "DESIGNER OF RECORD APPROVED/GOVERNMENT APPROVED" and VARIATIONS.

1.4.2.4 Designer of Record Approved/Government Approved (DA/GA)

In addition to the above-stated requirements for proposed variations to the accepted design, both DOR and Government Approval and, where applicable, a contract modification are required before the Contractor is authorized to proceed with material acquisition or installation for any proposed variation to the contract (the Solicitation or the Accepted Proposal), that constitutes a change to the contract terms. The Government reserves the right to accept or reject any such proposed variation.

1.4.3 For Information Only

Submittals not requiring Government approval will be for information only. For Design-build construction all submittals not requiring DOR or Government approval will be for information only. Within the terms of the Contract Clause SPECIFICATIONS AND DRAWINGS FOR CONSTRUCTION, they are not considered to be "shop drawings."

1.4.4 Sustainability Reporting Submittals (S)

Submittals for Guiding Principle Validation (GPV) or Third Party Certification (TPC) are indicated with an "S" designation. These submittals are for information only and for use as specified in Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING.

Schedule submittals for these items throughout the course of construction as provided; do not wait until closeout.

1.5 FORWARDING SUBMITTALS REQUIRING GOVERNMENT APPROVAL

As soon as practicable after award of contract, and before procurement or fabrication, forward to the [Commander, NAVFAC [_____], Code CI4[_____], [_____]] [Architect-Engineer: [_____],] submittals required in the technical sections of this specification, including shop drawings, product data and samples. In addition, forward a copy of the submittals to the Contracting Officer.

1.5.1 O&M Data

Submit data specified for a given item within 30 calendar days after the item is delivered to the contract site.

In the event the Contractor fails to deliver O&M data within the time limits specified, the Contracting Officer may withhold from progress payments 50 percent of the price of the items to which such O&M data apply.

[1.5.2 Submittals Reserved for NAVFAC [_____] Approval

As an exception to the standard submittal procedure for Government Approval, submit the following to the Commander, NAVFAC [_____], Code CI4[_____], [_____]:

[a. Section [_____] [_____]: Pile driving records

][b. Section [_____] [_____]: All fire protection system submittals

][c. Section [_____] [_____]: All fire alarm system submittals

][d. Section [_____] [_____]: All elevator submittals

][e. Section 01 91 00.15 BUILDING COMMISSIONING: SD-06 Commissioning Plan, Certificate of Readiness, and Commissioning Report submittals

][f. Section 23 09 00 INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC: SD-06 field test report submittals

][g. Section 23 09 53.00 20 SPACE TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEMS: SD-06 field test report submittals

][h. Section 23 05 93 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC: All submittals

][i. Section 23 08 01.00 20 TESTING INDUSTRIAL VENTILATION SYSTEMS: All submittals

][j. Section 26 12 19 PAD-MOUNTED, LIQUID-FILLED, MEDIUM-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS: All submittals

][k. Section 26 12 21 SINGLE-PHASE PAD-MOUNTED TRANSFORMERS: All submittals

][l. Section 33 71 01 OVERHEAD TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION: Transformer submittals

][m. Section 26 11 16 SECONDARY UNIT SUBSTATIONS: Transformer submittals

][n. Section 26 11 13.00 20 PRIMARY UNIT SUBSTATION: Transformer submittals

]][1.5.3 Overseas Shop Drawing Submittals

Send submittals via overnight express mail service. All costs associated with the overnight express mail service are borne by the Contractor. Costs associated with the overnight express mail of submittals related to proposed submittal variances of resubmittals necessary as a result of noncompliant or incomplete Contractor submittals are the responsibility of the Contractor.

]1.6 PREPARATION

1.6.1 Transmittal Form

Transmit each submittal, except sample installations and sample panels to the office of the approving authority using the transmittal form prescribed by the Contracting Officer. Include all information prescribed by the transmittal form and required in paragraph IDENTIFYING SUBMITTALS. Use the submittal transmittal forms to record actions regarding samples.

Use the ENG Form 4025-R transmittal form for submitting both Government-approved and information-only submittals. Submit in accordance with the instructions on the reverse side of the form. These forms or similar forms [will be furnished to the Contractor][are included in the RMS CM software that the Contractor is required to use for this contract][are included in the eCMS software that the Contractor is required to use for this contract]. Properly complete this form by filling out all the heading blank spaces and identifying each item submitted. Exercise special care to ensure proper listing of the specification paragraph and sheet number of the contract drawings pertinent to the data submitted for each item.

1.6.2 Identifying Submittals

The Contractor's [Quality Control Manager] must prepare, review and stamp submittals, including those provided by a subcontractor, before submittal to the Government.

Identify submittals, except sample installations and sample panels, with the following information permanently adhered to or noted on each separate component of each submittal and noted on transmittal form. Mark each copy of each submittal identically, with the following:

a. Project title and location

b. Construction contract number

c. Dates of the drawings and revisions

d. Name, address, and telephone number of Subcontractor, supplier, manufacturer, and any other Subcontractor associated with the submittal.

e. Section number of the specification by which submittal is required

f. Submittal description (SD) number of each component of submittal

g. For a resubmission, add alphabetic suffix on submittal description, for example, submittal 18 would become 18A, to indicate resubmission

h. Product identification and location in project.

1.6.3 Submittal Format

1.6.3.1 Format of SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

When the submittal includes a document that is to be used in the project, or is to become part of the project record, other than as a submittal, do not apply the Contractor's approval stamp to the document itself, but to a separate sheet accompanying the document.

Provide data in the unit of measure used in the contract documents.

1.6.3.2 Format for SD-02 Shop Drawings

Provide shop drawings not less than 8 1/2 by 11 inches nor more than 30 by 42 inches, except for full-size patterns or templates. Prepare drawings to accurate size, with scale indicated, unless another form is required. Ensure drawings are suitable for reproduction and of a quality to produce clear, distinct lines and letters, with dark lines on a white background.

a. Include the nameplate data, size, and capacity on drawings. Also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical society publication references.

b. Dimension drawings, except diagrams and schematic drawings. Prepare drawings demonstrating interface with other trades to scale. Use the same unit of measure for shop drawings as indicated on the contract drawings. Identify materials and products for work shown.

Present shop drawings sized 8 1/2 by 11 inches as part of the bound volume for submittals. Present larger drawings in sets. Submit an electronic copy of drawings in PDF format and native electronic format.

1.6.3.2.1 Drawing Identification

Include on each drawing the drawing title, number, date, and revision numbers and dates, in addition to information required in paragraph IDENTIFYING SUBMITTALS.

Number drawings in a logical sequence. Each drawing is to bear the number of the submittal in a uniform location next to the title block. Place the Government contract number in the margin, immediately below the title block, for each drawing.

Reserve a blank space, no smaller than [_____] inches on the right-hand side of each sheet for the Government disposition stamp.

1.6.3.3 Format of SD-03 Product Data

Present product data submittals for each section as a complete, bound volume. Include a table of contents, listing the page and catalog item numbers for product data.

Indicate, by prominent notation, each product that is being submitted; indicate the specification section number and paragraph number to which it pertains.

1.6.3.3.1 Product Information

Supplement product data with material prepared for the project to satisfy the submittal requirements where product data does not exist. Identify this material as developed specifically for the project, with information and format as required for submission of SD-07 Certificates.

Provide product data in units used in the Contract documents. Where product data are included in preprinted catalogs with another unit, submit the dimensions in contract document units, on a separate sheet.

1.6.3.3.2 Standards

Where equipment or materials are specified to conform to industry or technical-society reference standards of such organizations as the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), ASTM International (ASTM), National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), or Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC), submit proof of such compliance. The label or listing by the specified organization will be acceptable evidence of compliance. In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. State on the certificate that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard.

1.6.3.3.3 Data Submission

Collect required data submittals for each specific material, product, unit of work, or system into a single submittal that is marked for choices, options, and portions applicable to the submittal. Mark each copy of the product data identically. Partial submittals will [not] be accepted for expedition of the construction effort.

Submit the manufacturer's instructions before installation.

1.6.3.4 Format of SD-04 Samples

1.6.3.4.1 Sample Characteristics

Furnish samples in the following sizes, unless otherwise specified or unless the manufacturer has prepackaged samples of approximately the same size as specified:

a. Sample of Equipment or Device: Full size.

b. Sample of Materials Less Than 2 by 3 inches: Built up to 8 1/2 by 11 inches.

c. Sample of Materials Exceeding 8 1/2 by 11 inches: Cut down to 8 1/2 by 11 inches and adequate to indicate color, texture, and material variations.

d. Sample of Linear Devices or Materials: 10 inch length or length to be supplied, if less than 10 inches. Examples of linear devices or materials are conduit and handrails.

e. Sample Volume of Nonsolid Materials: Pint. Examples of nonsolid

materials are sand and paint.

f. Color Selection Samples: 2 by 4 inches. Where samples are specified for selection of color, finish, pattern, or texture, submit the full set of available choices for the material or product specified. Sizes and quantities of samples are to represent their respective standard unit.

g. Sample Panel: 4 by 4 feet.

h. Sample Installation: 100 square feet.

1.6.3.4.2 Sample Incorporation

Reusable Samples: Incorporate returned samples into work only if so specified or indicated. Incorporated samples are to be in undamaged condition at the time of use.

Recording of Sample Installation: Note and preserve the notation of any area constituting a sample installation, but remove the notation at the final clean-up of the project.

1.6.3.4.3 Comparison Sample

Samples Showing Range of Variation: Where variations in color, finish, pattern, or texture are unavoidable due to nature of the materials, submit sets of samples of not less than three units showing extremes and middle of range. Mark each unit to describe its relation to the range of the variation.

When color, texture, or pattern is specified by naming a particular manufacturer and style, include one sample of that manufacturer and style, for comparison.

1.6.3.5 Format of SD-05 Design Data

Provide design data and certificates on 8 1/2 by 11 inch paper. Provide a bound volume for submittals containing numerous pages.

1.6.3.6 Format of SD-06 Test Reports

Provide reports on 8 1/2 by 11 inch paper in a complete bound volume.

By prominent notation, indicate each report in the submittal. Indicate the specification number and paragraph number to which each report pertains.

1.6.3.7 Format of SD-07 Certificates

Provide design data and certificates on 8 1/2 by 11 inch paper. Provide a bound volume for submittals containing numerous pages.

1.6.3.8 Format of SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Present manufacturer's instructions submittals for each section as a complete, bound volume. Include the manufacturer's name, trade name, place of manufacture, and catalog model or number on product data. Also include applicable federal, military, industry, and technical-society publication references. If supplemental information is needed to clarify

the manufacturer's data, submit it as specified for SD-07 Certificates.

Submit the manufacturer's instructions before installation.

1.6.3.8.1 Standards

Where equipment or materials are specified to conform to industry or technical-society reference standards of such organizations as the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), ASTM International (ASTM), National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA), Underwriters Laboratories (UL), or Association of Edison Illuminating Companies (AEIC), submit proof of such compliance. The label or listing by the specified organization will be acceptable evidence of compliance. In lieu of the label or listing, submit a certificate from an independent testing organization, competent to perform testing, and approved by the Contracting Officer. State on the certificate that the item has been tested in accordance with the specified organization's test methods and that the item complies with the specified organization's reference standard.

1.6.3.9 Format of SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Reports

Provide reports on 8 1/2 by 11 inch paper in a complete bound volume.

By prominent notation, indicate each report in the submittal. Indicate the specification number and paragraph number to which each report pertains.

1.6.3.10 Format of SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data (O&M)

Comply with the requirements specified in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA for O&M Data format.

1.6.3.11 Format of SD-11 Closeout Submittals

When the submittal includes a document that is to be used in the project or is to become part of the project record, other than as a submittal, do not apply the Contractor's approval stamp to the document itself, but to a separate sheet accompanying the document.

Provide data in the unit of measure used in the contract documents.

1.6.4 Source Drawings for Shop Drawings

1.6.4.1 Source Drawings

The entire set of source drawing files (DWG) will not be provided to the Contractor. Request the specific Drawing Number for the preparation of shop drawings. Only those drawings requested to prepare shop drawings will be provided. These drawings are provided only after award.

1.6.4.2 Terms and Conditions

Data contained on these electronic files must not be used for any purpose other than as a convenience in the preparation of construction data for the referenced project. Any other use or reuse is at the sole risk of the Contractor and without liability or legal exposure to the Government. The Contractor must make no claim, and waives to the fullest extent permitted by law any claim or cause of action of any nature against the Government,

its agents, or its subconsultants that may arise out of or in connection with the use of these electronic files. The Contractor must, to the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify and hold the Government harmless against all damages, liabilities, or costs, including reasonable attorney's fees and defense costs, arising out of or resulting from the use of these electronic files.

These electronic source drawing files are not construction documents. Differences may exist between the source drawing files and the corresponding construction documents. The Government makes no representation regarding the accuracy or completeness of the electronic source drawing files, nor does it make representation to the compatibility of these files with the Contractor hardware or software. The Contractor is responsible for determining if any conflict exists. In the event that a conflict arises between the signed and sealed construction documents prepared by the Government and the furnished source drawing files, the signed and sealed construction documents govern. Use of these source drawing files does not relieve the Contractor of the duty to fully comply with the contract documents, including and without limitation the need to check, confirm and coordinate the work of all contractors for the project. If the Contractor uses, duplicates or modifies these electronic source drawing files for use in producing construction data related to this contract, remove all previous indication of ownership (seals, logos, signatures, initials and dates).

1.6.5 Electronic File Format

Provide submittals in electronic format, with the exception of material samples required for SD-04 Samples items. [In addition to the electronic submittal, provide [three] [_____] hard copies of the submittals.] Compile the submittal file as a single, complete document, to include the Transmittal Form described within, and also separately attach the native files which were used to create PDF. The attached files should include the original digital files used to create the submittal. Name the electronic submittal file specifically according to its contents, and coordinate the file naming convention with the Contracting Officer. Electronic files must be of sufficient quality that all information is legible. Use PDF as the electronic format, unless otherwise specified or directed by the Contracting Officer. Generate PDF files from original documents with bookmarks so that the text included in the PDF file is searchable and can be copied. If documents are scanned, optical character resolution (OCR) routines are required. Index and bookmark files exceeding 30 pages to allow efficient navigation of the file. When required, the electronic file must include a valid electronic signature or a scan of a signature.

E-mail electronic submittal documents smaller than 10MB to an e-mail address as directed by the Contracting Officer. Provide electronic documents over 10 MB on an optical disc or through an electronic file sharing system such as the DOD SAFE Web Application located at the following website: https://safe.apps.mil/.

1.7 QUANTITY OF SUBMITTALS

1.7.1 Number of SD-01 Preconstruction Submittal Copies

Unless otherwise specified, submit [two][three] sets of administrative submittals.

1.7.2 Number of SD-02 Shop Drawing Copies

Submit [six][_____] copies of submittals of shop drawings requiring review and approval by a QC organization. Submit [seven][_____] copies of shop drawings requiring review and approval by the Contracting Officer.

1.7.3 Number of SD-03 Product Data Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.7.4 Number of SD-04 Samples

a. Submit [two] [_____] samples, or [two] [_____] sets of samples showing the range of variation, of each required item. One approved sample or set of samples will be retained by the approving authority and one will be returned to the Contractor.

b. Submit one sample panel or provide one sample installation where directed. Include components listed in the technical section or as directed.

c. Submit one sample installation, where directed.

d. Submit one sample of nonsolid materials.

1.7.5 Number of SD-05 Design Data Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.7.6 Number of SD-06 Test Report Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity and quality requirements specified for shop drawings, other than field test results that will be submitted with QC reports.

1.7.7 Number of SD-07 Certificate Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.7.8 Number of SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity requirements specified for shop drawings.

1.7.9 Number of SD-09 Manufacturer's Field Report Copies

Submit in compliance with quantity and quality requirements specified for shop drawings other than field test results that will be submitted with QC reports.

1.7.10 Number of SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data Copies

Submit [five][three][_____] copies of O&M data to the Contracting Officer for review and approval.

1.7.11 Number of SD-11 Closeout Submittals Copies

Unless otherwise specified, submit [two][three] sets of administrative submittals.

1.8 INFORMATION ONLY SUBMITTALS

Submittals without a "G" designation must be certified by the QC manager and submitted to the Contracting Officer for information-only. Provide information-only submittals to the Contracting Officer a minimum of 14 calendar days prior to the Preparatory Meeting for the associated Definable Feature of Work (DFOW). Approval of the Contracting Officer is not required on information only submittals. The Contracting Officer will mark "receipt acknowledged" on submittals for information and will return only the transmittal cover sheet to the Contractor. Normally, submittals for information only will not be returned. However, the Government reserves the right to return unsatisfactory submittals and require the Contractor to resubmit any item found not to comply with the contract. This does not relieve the Contractor from the obligation to furnish material conforming to the plans and specifications; will not prevent the Contracting Officer from requiring removal and replacement of nonconforming material incorporated in the work; and does not relieve the Contractor of the requirement to furnish samples for testing by the Government laboratory or for check testing by the Government in those instances where the technical specifications so prescribe. For Design-Build construction, the Government will retain [_____] copies of information-only submittals.

1.9 PROJECT SUBMITTAL REGISTER

A sample Project Submittal Register showing items of equipment and materials for when submittals are required by the specifications is provided as "Attachment A - Submittal Register."

1.9.1 Submittal Management

Prepare and maintain a submittal register, as the work progresses. Do not change data that is output in columns (c), (d), (e), and (f) as delivered by Government; retain data that is output in columns (a), (g), (h), and (i) as approved. As an attachment, provide a submittal register showing items of equipment and materials for which submittals are required by the specifications. This list may not be all-inclusive and additional submittals may be required. Maintain a submittal register for the project in accordance with Section 01 45 00.15 10 RESIDENT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM CONTRACTOR MODE(RMS CM).[The Government will provide the initial submittal register][in electronic format][with the following fields completed, to the extent that will be required by the Government during subsequent usage.]

Column (c): Lists specification section in which submittal is required.

Column (d): Lists each submittal description (SD Number. and type, e.g., SD-02 Shop Drawings) required in each specification section.

Column (e): Lists one principal paragraph in each specification section where a material or product is specified. This listing is only to facilitate locating submitted requirements. Do not

consider entries in column (e) as limiting the project requirements.

Column (f): Lists the approving authority for each submittal.

Thereafter, the Contractor is to track all submittals by maintaining a complete list, including completion of all data columns and all dates on which submittals are received by and returned by the Government.

1.9.2 Design-Build Submittal Register

The Designer of Record develops a complete list of submittals during design and identify required submittals in the specifications, and use the list to prepare the Submittal Register. The list may not be all inclusive and additional submittals may be required by other parts of the contract. Complete the submittal register and submit it to the Contracting Officer for approval within 30 calendar days after Notice to Proceed. The approved submittal register will serve as a scheduling document for submittals and will be used to control submittal actions throughout the contract period. Coordinate the submit dates and need dates with dates in the Contractor prepared progress schedule. Submit monthly or until all submittals have been satisfactorily completed, updates to the submittal register showing the Contractor action codes and actual dates with Government action codes. Revise the submittal register when the progress schedule is revised and submit both for approval.

1.9.3 Preconstruction Use of Submittal Register

Submit the submittal register. Include the QC plan and the project schedule. Verify that all submittals required for the project are listed and add missing submittals. Coordinate and complete the following fields on the register submitted with the QC plan and the project schedule:

Column (a) Activity Number: Activity number from the project schedule.

Column (g) Contractor Submit Date: Scheduled date for the approving authority to receive submittals.

Column (h) Contractor Approval Date: Date that Contractor needs approval of submittal.

Column (i) Contractor Material: Date that Contractor needs material delivered to Contractor control.

1.9.4 Contractor Use of Submittal Register

Update the following fields in the Government-furnished submittal register program or equivalent fields in the program used by the Contractor with each submittal throughout the contract.

Column (b) Transmittal Number: List of consecutive, Contractor-assigned numbers.

Column (j) Action Code (k): Date of action used to record Contractor's review when forwarding submittals to QC.

Column (l) Date submittal transmitted.

Column (q) Date approval was received.

1.9.5 Approving Authority Use of Submittal Register

Update the following fields:

Column (b) Transmittal Number: List of consecutive, Contractor-assigned numbers.

Column (l) Date submittal was received.

Column (m) through (p) Dates of review actions.

Column (q) Date of return to Contractor.

1.9.6 Action Codes

1.9.6.1 Government Review Action Codes

"A" - "Approved as submitted"

"AN" - "Approved as noted"

"RR" - "Disapproved as submitted"; "Completed"

"NR" - "Not Reviewed"

"RA" - "Receipt Acknowledged"

1.9.6.2 Contractor Action Codes

DESIGN BID BUILD SUBMITTALS			
Submittal Classifications shown in UFGS Sections	Submittal Classification	Corresponding SpecsIntact Submittal Register Code which is populated in the SI Submittal Register. Software Limitations: (The software shows one character delineation in the SpecsIntact Submittal Register)	RMS – The following Submittal Classifications are populated in RMS when the SpecsIntact Submittal Data File is pulled into RMS)
G	Submittal requires Government Approval	G	GA
BLANK	Submittal is For Information Only (FIO)	BLANK	FIO

DESIGN BID BUILD SUBMITTALS			
S	Submittal is for documentation of Sustainable requirements	S	S/FIO

1.9.6.3 Contractor Action Codes

DESIGN BUILD SUBMITTALS			
Submittal Classifications shown in UFGS Sections	Submittal Classification	Corresponding SpecsIntact Submittal Register Code which is populated in the SI Submittal Register. Software Limitations: (The software shows one character delineation in the SpecsIntact Submittal Register)	RMS – The following Submittal Classifications are populated in RMS when the SpecsIntact Submittal Data File is pulled into RMS)
G	Submittal requires Government Approval	G	GA
BLANK	Submittal is For Information Only(FIO)	BLANK	FIO
DA	Submittal requires Designer of Record Approval	D	DA
CR	Submittal requires Government Conformance Review	C	CR
DA/CR	Submittal requires Designer of Record Approval and Government Conformance Review	R	DA/CR
DA/GA	Submittal requires Designer of Record Approval and Government Approval	A	DA/GA

1.9.7 Delivery of Copies

Submit an updated electronic copy of the submittal register to the Contracting Officer with each invoice request. Provide an updated Submittal Register monthly regardless of whether an invoice is submitted.

1.10 VARIATIONS

Variations from contract requirements require Contracting Officer approval pursuant to contract Clause FAR 52.236-21 Specifications and Drawings for Construction, and will be considered where advantageous to the Government.

1.10.1 Considering Variations

Discussion of variations with the Contracting Officer before submission [of a variation submittal] will help ensure that functional and quality requirements are met and minimize rejections and resubmittals. For variations that include design changes or some material or product substitutions, the Government may require an evaluation and analysis by a licensed professional engineer hired by the contractor.

Specifically point out variations from contract requirements in a [transmittal letter][variation submittal]. Failure to point out variations may cause the Government to require rejection and removal of such work at no additional cost to the Government.

1.10.2 Proposing Variations

[When proposing variation, deliver a submittal, clearly marked as a "VARIATION" to the Contracting Officer, with documentation illustrating the nature and features of the variation including any necessary technical submittals and why the variation is desirable and beneficial to Government. If lower cost is a benefit, also include an estimate of the cost savings. In addition to documentation required for variation, include the submittals required for the item. Clearly mark the proposed variation in all documentation.]

[The Contracting Officer will indicate an approval or disapproval of the variation request; and if not approved as submitted, will indicate the Government's reasons therefore. Any work done before such approval is received is performed at the Contractor's risk.]"

Specifically point out variations from contract requirements in a [transmittal letter][variation submittal]. Failure to point out variations may cause the Government to require rejection and removal of such work at no additional cost to the Government.

Check the column "variation" of ENG Form 4025 for submittals that include variations proposed by the Contractor. Set forth in writing the reason for any variations and note such variations on the submittal. The Government reserves the right to rescind inadvertent approval of submittals containing unnoted variations.

1.10.3 Warranting that Variations are Compatible

When delivering a variation for approval, the Contractor warrants that this contract has been reviewed to establish that the variation, if incorporated, will be compatible with other elements of work.

1.10.4 Review Schedule Extension

In addition to the normal submittal review period, a period of [14] [_____] calendar working days will be allowed for the Government to consider submittals with variations.

1.11 SCHEDULING

Schedule and submit concurrently product data and shop drawings covering component items forming a system or items that are interrelated. Submit pertinent certifications at the same time. No delay damages or time extensions will be allowed for time lost in late submittals. [Allow an additional [_____] calendar working days for review and approval of submittals for [food service equipment] [and] [refrigeration and HVAC control systems]].

a. Coordinate scheduling, sequencing, preparing, and processing of submittals with performance of work so that work will not be delayed by submittal processing. The Contractor is responsible for additional time required for Government reviews resulting from required resubmittals. The review period for each resubmittal is the same as for the initial submittal.

b. Submittals required by the contract documents are listed on the submittal register. If a submittal is listed in the submittal register but does not pertain to the contract work, the Contractor is to include the submittal in the register and annotate it "N/A" with a brief explanation. Approval by the Contracting Officer does not relieve the Contractor of supplying submittals required by the contract documents but that have been omitted from the register or marked "N/A."

c. Resubmit the submittal register and annotate it monthly with actual submission and approval dates. When all items on the register have been fully approved, no further resubmittal is required.

Contracting Officer review will be completed within [_____] calendar working days after the date of submission.

d. Except as specified otherwise, allow a review period, beginning with receipt by the approving authority, that includes at least [15] [_____] working days for submittals for QC manager approval and [20] [_____] working days for submittals where the Contracting Officer is the approving authority. The period of review for submittals with Contracting Officer approval begins when the Government receives the submittal from the QC organization.

e. For submittals requiring review by a Government fire protection engineer, allow a review period, beginning when the Government receives the submittal from the QC organization, of [30][_____] working days for return of the submittal to the Contractor.

1.11.1 Reviewing, Certifying, and Approving Authority

The QC Manager is responsible for reviewing all submittals and certifying that they are in compliance with contract requirements. The approving authority on submittals is the QC Manager unless otherwise specified. At each "Submittal" paragraph in individual specification sections, a notation "G" following a submittal item indicates that the Contracting

Officer is the approving authority for that submittal item. Provide an additional copy of the submittal to the Government Approving authority

1.11.2 Constraints

Conform to provisions of this section, unless explicitly stated otherwise for submittals listed or specified in this contract.

Submit complete submittals for each definable feature of the work. At the same time, submit components of definable features that are interrelated as a system.

When acceptability of a submittal is dependent on conditions, items, or materials included in separate subsequent submittals, the submittal will be returned without review.

Approval of a separate material, product, or component does not imply approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

1.11.3 QC Organization Responsibilities

a. Review submittals for conformance with project design concepts and compliance with contract documents.

b. Process submittals based on the approving authority indicated in the submittal register.

(1) When the QC manager is the approving authority, take appropriate action on the submittal from the possible actions defined in paragraph APPROVED SUBMITTALS.

(2) When the Contracting Officer is the approving authority or when variation has been proposed, forward the submittal to the Government, along with a certifying statement, or return the submittal marked "not reviewed" or "revise and resubmit" as appropriate. The QC organization's review of the submittal determines the appropriate action.

c. Ensure that material is clearly legible.

d. Stamp each sheet of each submittal with a QC certifying statement or an approving statement, except that data submitted in a bound volume or on one sheet printed on two sides may be stamped on the front of the first sheet only.

(1) When the approving authority is the Contracting Officer, the QC organization will certify submittals forwarded to the Contracting Officer with the following certifying statement:

"I hereby certify that the (equipment) (material) (article) shown and marked in this submittal is that proposed to be incorporated with Contract Number [_____] is in compliance with the contract drawings and specification, can be installed in the allocated spaces, and is submitted for Government approval.

Certified by Submittal Reviewer _____, Date _____
(Signature when applicable)

Certified by QC Manager _____, Date _____"

(Signature)

(2) When approving authority is the QC manager, the QC manager will use the following approval statement when returning submittals to the Contractor as "Approved" or "Approved as Noted."

"I hereby certify that the (material) (equipment) (article) shown and marked in this submittal and proposed to be incorporated with Contract Number [_____] is in compliance with the contract drawings and specification, can be installed in the allocated spaces, and is approved for use.

Certified by Submittal Reviewer _____, Date _____
(Signature when applicable)

Approved by QC Manager _____, Date _____"
(Signature)

e. Sign the certifying statement or approval statement. The QC organization member designated in the approved QC plan is the person signing certifying statements. The use of original ink for signatures is required. Stamped signatures are not acceptable.

f. Update the submittal register as submittal actions occur, and maintain the submittal register at the project site until final acceptance of all work by the Contracting Officer.

g. Retain a copy of approved submittals and approved samples at the project site.

h. For "S" submittals, provide a copy of the approved submittal to the Government Approving authority.

1.11.4 Government Reviewed Design

The Government will review design submittals for conformance with the technical requirements of the Solicitation. Section 01 33 16.00 10 DESIGN DATA (DESIGN AFTER AWARD) covers the design submittal and review process in detail. Government review is required for variations from the completed design. Review will be only for conformance with the contract requirements. Included are only those construction submittals for which the DOR's design documents do not include enough detail to ascertain contract compliance. The Government may, but is not required to, review extensions of design such as structural steel or reinforcement shop drawings.

1.12 GOVERNMENT APPROVING AUTHORITY

When the approving authority is the Contracting Officer, the Government will:

a. Note the date on which the submittal was received from the QC manager.

b. Review submittals for approval within the scheduling period specified and only for conformance with project design concepts and compliance with contract documents.

c. Identify returned submittals with one of the actions defined in paragraph REVIEW NOTATIONS and with comments and markings appropriate

for the action indicated.

Upon completion of review of submittals requiring Government approval, stamp and date submittals. [_____] copies of the submittal will be retained by the Contracting Officer and [_____] copies of the submittal will be returned to the Contractor.If the Government performs a conformance review of other Designer of Record approved submittals, the submittals will be identified and returned, as described above.

1.12.1 Review Notations

Submittals will be returned to the Contractor with the following notations:

a. Submittals marked "approved" or "accepted" authorize proceeding with the work covered.

b. Submittals marked "approved as noted" or "approved, except as noted, resubmittal not required," authorize proceeding with the work covered provided that the Contractor takes no exception to the corrections.

c. Submittals marked "not approved," "disapproved," or "revise and resubmit" indicate incomplete submittal or noncompliance with the contract requirements or design concept. Resubmit with appropriate changes. Do not proceed with work for this item until the resubmittal is approved.

d. Submittals marked "not reviewed" indicate that the submittal has been previously reviewed and approved, is not required, does not have evidence of being reviewed and approved by Contractor, or is not complete. A submittal marked "not reviewed" will be returned with an explanation of the reason it is not reviewed. Resubmit submittals returned for lack of review by Contractor or for being incomplete, with appropriate action, coordination, or change.

e. Submittals marked "receipt acknowledged" indicate that submittals have been received by the Government. This applies only to "information-only submittals" as previously defined.

1.13 DISAPPROVED SUBMITTALS

Make corrections required by the Contracting Officer. If the Contractor considers any correction or notation on the returned submittals to constitute a change to the contract drawings or specifications, give notice to the Contracting Officer as required under the FAR clause titled CHANGES. The Contractor is responsible for the dimensions and design of connection details and the construction of work. Failure to point out variations may cause the Government to require rejection and removal of such work at the Contractor's expense.

If changes are necessary to submittals, make such revisions and resubmit in accordance with the procedures above. No item of work requiring a submittal change is to be accomplished until the changed submittals are approved.

1.14 APPROVED SUBMITTALS

The Contracting Officer's approval of submittals is not to be construed as a complete check, and indicates only thatthe general method of construction, materials, detailing, and other information are satisfactory.

the design, general method of construction, materials, detailing, and other information appear to meet the Solicitation and Accepted Proposal.

Approval or acceptance by the Government for a submittal does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for meeting the contract requirements or for any error that may exist, because under the Quality Control (QC) requirements of this contract, the Contractor is responsible for ensuring information contained with in each submittal accurately conforms with the requirements of the contract documents.

After submittals have been approved or accepted by the Contracting Officer, no resubmittal for the purpose of substituting materials or equipment will be considered unless accompanied by an explanation of why a substitution is necessary.

1.15 APPROVED SAMPLES

Approval of a sample is only for the characteristics or use named in such approval and is not be construed to change or modify any contract requirements. Before submitting samples, provide assurance that the materials or equipment will be available in quantities required in the project. No change or substitution will be permitted after a sample has been approved.

Match the approved samples for materials and equipment incorporated in the work. If requested, approved samples, including those that may be damaged in testing, will be returned to the Contractor, at its expense, upon completion of the contract. Unapproved samples will also be returned to the Contractor at its expense, if so requested.

Failure of any materials to pass the specified tests will be sufficient cause for refusal to consider, under this contract, any further samples of the same brand or make as that material. The Government reserves the right to disapprove any material or equipment that has previously proved unsatisfactory in service.

Samples of various materials or equipment delivered on the site or in place may be taken by the Contracting Officer for testing. Samples failing to meet contract requirements will automatically void previous approvals. Replace such materials or equipment to meet contract requirements.

1.16 WITHHOLDING OF PAYMENT

Payment for materials incorporated in the work will not be made if required approvals have not been obtained. No payment for materials incorporated in the work will be made unless all required DOR approvals or required Government approvals have been obtained. No payment will be made for any materials incorporated into the work for any conformance review submittals or information-only submittals found to contain errors or deviations from the Solicitation or Accepted Proposal.

1.17 CERTIFICATION OF SUBMITTAL DATA

Certify the submittal data as follows on Form ENG 4025: "I certify that the above submitted items had been reviewed in detail and are correct and in strict conformance with the contract drawings and specifications except as otherwise stated.

_____NAME OF CONTRACTOR _____ SIGNATURE OF CONTRACTOR

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not Used

-- End of Section --

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		01 33 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Submittal Register	1.9	G													
		05 05 20	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Installer Qualifications	1.5.1.1	G													
			Post-Installed Anchor Special	1.5.1.2	G													
			Inspector Qualifications															
			SD-03 Product Data															
			Adhesive Anchor System in	2.1.1.3	G													
			Concrete															
			Non-Shrink, Non-Metallic Grout	3.1.2	G													
			Fall Arrest Anchors	2.1.2														
			SD-06 Test Reports															
			Post-Installed Anchor Special	3.3.3	G													
			Inspections Report															
			SD-07 Certificates															
			Fall Arrest Anchor Certificates	2.1.2														
			Post-Installed Anchor	2.1.1.1	G													
			Certification															
			SD-08 Manufacturer’s Instructions															
			Manufacturer's Printed	2.1.1.2	G													
			Installation Instructions															
			Non-Shrink, Non-Metallic Grout	3.1.2	G													
			Manufacturer's Safety Data	1.5														
			Sheets															
		05 05 23.16	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Welding Quality Assurance Plan	3.2	G													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		05 05 23.16	SD-03 Product Data															
			Welding Procedure Qualifications	1.3	G													
			Welder, Welding Operator, and	1.3.4														
			Tacker Qualification															
			Previous Qualifications	1.3.2														
			Pre-Qualified Procedures	1.3.3	G													
			Welding Electrodes and Rods	2.2														
			SD-06 Test Reports															
			Nondestructive Testing	3.3														
			Weld Inspection Log	3.2														
			SD-07 Certificates															
			Certified Welding Procedure	1.3.1														
			Specifications (WPS)															
			Certified Brazing Procedure	1.3.1														
			Specifications (BPS)															
			Certified Procedure Qualification	1.3.1														
			Records (PQR)															
			Certified Welder Performance	1.3.1														
			Qualifications (WPQ)															
			Certified Brazer Performance	1.3.1														
			Qualifications (BPQ)															
			Certified Welding Inspector	1.3.5														
			Nondestructive Testing Personnel	1.3.5														
		05 12 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Erection and Erection Bracing	1.5.1.1	G													
			Drawings															

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY					MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)		(q)	(r)
		05 12 00	Welding Quality Assurance Plan		G														
			SD-02 Shop Drawings																
			Fabrication Drawings	1.5.2	G														
			Welding Procedures	2.9.5.1.1	G														
			Welding Repair Plan																
			Castings	2.9.7															
			SD-03 Product Data																
			Welding Electrodes and Rods	2.4.1															
			Direct Tension Indicator Washers	2.3.2.3															
			Non-Shrink Grout	2.4.2															
			Tension Control Bolts	3.2.3															
			Recycled Content for Structural	2.2.1	S														
			Steel																
			Recycled Content for Structural	2.2.2	S														
			Steel Tubing																
			Recycled Content for Steel Pipe	2.2.3	S														
			Welding Procedure Qualifications		G														
			Welder, Welding Operator, and																
			Tacker Qualification																
			Previous Qualifications																
			Pre-Qualified Procedures	2.1.1	G														
			Application Qualification For Steel	2.9.5.3.1															
			Studs																
			SD-05 Design Data																
			Design Calculations for Steel	1.5.3	G														
			Connections																

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY					MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)		(q)	(r)
		05 12 00	Shoring and Temporary Bracing	1.5.2	G														
			SD-06 Test Reports																
			Bolts, Nuts, and Washers	2.3															
			Bolt Testing Reports	3.6.2.1															
			Nondestructive Testing	3.6.1.2															
			Weld Inspection Log																
			Tests, Inspections, And	2.9.11															
			Verifications																
			SD-07 Certificates																
			Steel	2.2															
			Bolts, Nuts, and Washers	2.3															
			Galvanizing	2.5															
			AISC Structural Steel Fabricator	1.3															
			Quality Certification																
			AISC Structural Steel Erector	1.3															
			Quality Certification																
			Welding Procedures and	1.5.4.1															
			Qualifications																
			Welding Electrodes and Rods	2.4.1															
			Welding Procedure Specifications	3.4															
			(WPS)																
			Certified Welding Procedure																
			Specifications (WPS)																
			Certified Procedure Qualification																
			Records (PQR)																

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		05 12 00	Certified Welder Performance															
			Qualifications (WPQ)															
			Nondestructive Testing Personnel	2.1														
		05 51 33	SD-02 Shop Drawings															
			Ladders	2.4														
			Ladders	3.6														
			SD-03 Product Data															
			Ladders	2.4														
			Ladders	3.6														
			SD-07 Certificates															
			Fabricator Certification for Ladder	1.3														
			Assembly															
		05 52 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings															
			Fabrication Drawings	1.2.1	G													
			Fabrication Drawings	1.5.1	G													
			Iron and Steel Hardware	3.2	G													
			Steel Shapes, Plates, Bars and	3.2	G													
			Strips															
			SD-03 Product Data															
			Concrete Inserts	2.1	G													
			Anchorage Devices	2.2.4	G													
			Protective Coating	2.1.3	G													
			Steel Railings and Handrails	2.2.6	G													
			Anchorage and Fastening	1.2.1	G													
			Systems															
			SD-05 Design Data															

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY					MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)		(q)	(r)
		05 52 00	Design Calculations For Steel	1.5.2	G														
			Connections																
			SD-06 Test Reports																
			Welding Inspections	1.4.1	G														
			Mill Test Reports	2.3	G														
			SD-07 Certificates																
			Welder Qualification	1.4.2	G														
			SD-08 Manufacturer’s Instructions																
			Installation Instructions	3.2															
		25 05 11	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals																
			Wireless and Wired Broadcast	3.2.2.3	G														
			Communication Request																
			Device Account Lock Exception	3.3.2	G														
			Request																
			Multiple Ethernet Connection	3.2.4.2	G														
			Device Request																
			Contractor Computer	1.10.1.8	G														
			Cybersecurity Compliance																
			Statements																
			Contractor Temporary Network	1.10.6	G														
			Cybersecurity Compliance																
			Statements																
			Cybersecurity Interconnection	1.8.2	G														
			Schedule (Encrypted)																
			Protection of Information At Rest	3.7.4	G														
			Proposal																

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		25 05 11	Proposed STIG and SRG	1.8.1	G													
			Applicability Report															
			Pre-Construction Control System	1.8.4	G													
			Inventory Report (Encrypted)															
			Contractor Personnel	1.7.1	G													
			Certifications															
			USACE OT/Control Systems	1.7.1	G													
			Acceptable Use Policy (AUP)															
			Account Level Permissions List	3.3.1.1.1	G													
			(Encrypted)															
			SD-02 Shop Drawings															
			Network Communication, Ports,	1.8.3	G													
			Protocols and Services Report															
			Cybersecurity Network (Riser)	1.8.7	G													
			Diagram (Encrypted)															
			System Data Flow Diagram	1.8.5	G													
			(Encrypted)															
			SD-03 Product Data															
			Control System Cybersecurity	1.8.9	G													
			Documentation															
			Certificate Protection Status	3.4.8	G													
			(Encrypted)															
			SD-06 Test Reports															
			Wireless Communication Test	3.2.2.4	G													
			Report															

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		25 05 11	Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures	3.16.1	G													
			Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report	3.16.3	G													
			Antivirus/Antimalware Scan Results	3.15.1	G													
			SD-07 Certificates															
			Software Licenses	1.9	G													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals															
			Confidential Password Report	3.4.5.5	G													
			Password Change Summary Report	3.4.5.5	G													
			Enclosure Keys	3.3.7	G													
			Software and Configuration Backups (Encrypted)	1.8.6	G													
			Auditing Front End Software	3.5.3	G													
			Device Audit Record Upload Software	3.5.4.2	G													
			System Maintenance Tool Software	3.9	G													
			Control System Scanning Tools	3.11.2	G													
			STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report (Encrypted)	1.8.8	G													
			Final Control System Inventory Report (Encrypted)	1.8.4	G													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		25 05 11	Integrity Verification Software	3.15.2	G													
			Vulnerability Resolution Report	3.12	G													
			BIOS/UEFI Protection	3.14	G													
			Password/Passphrase List															
			(Encrypted)															
		26 05 19.00 10	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Cable Installation Plan	3.2	G													
			SD-03 Product Data															
			Wire and Cable	2.1.1	G													
			Conductors	2.1.3.1	G													
			Cable Manufacturing Data	3.1														
			SD-06 Test Reports															
			Test Report(s), Inspection	3.3	G													
			Report(s), and Verification															
			Report(s)															
			Cable Installation Report	3.3.2.2	G													
		26 05 48	SD-02 Shop Drawings															
			Equipment Requirements	2.1	G													
			Lighting Fixtures	3.4	G													
			SD-03 Product Data															
			Supports and Attachments	1.2.3	G													
			Equipment Requirements	2.1	G													
			Lighting Fixtures	3.4	G													
			Flexible Fittings	2.4	G													
			Anchors	3.5	G													
			SD-05 Design Data															

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY					MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)		(q)	(r)
		26 05 48	Design Calculations	1.2.3	G														
			Design Drawings	1.2.3	G														
			SD-06 Test Reports																
			Anchors	3.5	G														
			SD-07 Certificates																
			ICC ES AC156 Shake Table Test	3.7	G														
		26 20 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings																
			Motor Control Centers	2.12	G														
			Control Panel	2.9	G														
			SD-03 Product Data																
			Switches	2.7	G														
			SD-06 Test Reports																
			600-volt Wiring Test	3.5.2	G														
			SD-07 Certificates																
			Fuses	2.8	G														
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance																
			Data																
			Electrical Systems	1.6.1	G														
		26 28 00.00 10	SD-02 Shop Drawings																
			Drawings	2.7.2	G														
			Shop Drawings	2.4.1	G														
			Motor Control Centers	2.8	G														
			SD-03 Product Data																
			Equipment	1.4	G														
			Factory Tests	2.9															
			Request For Settings	3.3															

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAGRAPH #	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		26 28 00.00 10	SD-06 Test Reports															
			Factory Tests	2.9														
			Acceptance Checks And Tests	3.3.1	G													
			SD-07 Certificates															
			Motor Control Centers	2.8														
		31 00 00	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Excavation and Trenching Plan	3.1.3	G													
			Borrow Plan	3.2	G													
			Dewatering Work Plan	3.1.2.2	G													
			Jacking, Boring, and Tunneling	3.4.3	G													
			Plan															
			Rock Excavation Plan	3.4.6	G													
			Disposition of Surplus Materials	3.10	G													
			Preconstruction Meeting	1.5.3	G													
			SD-03 Product Data															
			Fill Mix Design	2.2	G													
			Geotextiles	2.6														
			SD-04 Samples															
			Geotextiles	2.6														
			SD-06 Test Reports															
			Dewatering Performance Records	3.1.2.2	G													
			Material Test Report	3.11	G													
		32 11 23	SD-03 Product Data															
			Plant, Equipment, and Tools	2.4	G													
			Waybills and Delivery Tickets	1.1.3														
		32 12 16.16	SD-03 Product Data															

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY					MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		32 12 16.16	Mix Design		G													
			Contractor Quality Control	1.3.8	G													
			SD-06 Test Reports															
			Materials		G													
			QC Monitoring															
			SD-07 Certificates															
			Laboratory Accreditation and	1.3.8														
			Validation															
		35 01 41.00 10	SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals															
			Installation and Alignment	3.8.1	G													
			Procedure															
			Equipment Protection Plan	3.7.2	G													
			Materials List	2.2.8	G													
			Commissioning	1.1	G													
			Pre-Functional Checklist	3.11														
			Functional Checklist	3.11														
			SD-02 Shop Drawings															
			Detail Drawings	2.2.8	G													
			Materials Orders	2.2.8														
			Shipping Bills	1.6.2														
			SD-03 Product Data															
			Manufacturer's Literature and	2.2.8	G													
			Equipment Data															
			SD-05 Design Data															
			Trashrake Equipment	1.1.1	G													
			Trashrake Equipment	1.1.3	G													

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY					MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)		(q)	(r)
		35 01 41.00 10	Trashrake Equipment	1.4.1	G														
			Trashrake Equipment	2.1.2	G														
			Trashrake Equipment	2.5	G														
			Trashrake Equipment	2.8.1	G														
			Design Data Calculations	2.2.8	G														
			SD-06 Test Reports																
			Electric Motors	2.6															
			Final Operating Test	3.8.2	G														
			Startup and Acceptance Test	3.11															
			Inspection Log	3.6															
			Shop Assembly and Tests	2.8															
			SD-07 Certificates																
			Qualification of Welders and	3.4															
			Welding Operators																
			Equipment Warranty	3.12															
			Erecting Engineer Installation and	3.9															
			Operation																
			Nondestructive Examination	3.5.1															
			Certification																
			Commissioning Document	3.11															
			SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions																
			Cleaning of Corrosion-Resisting	3.7.1	G														
			Steel																
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance																
			Data																

SUBMITTAL REGISTER

CONTRACT NO.

TITLE AND LOCATION
The Dalles Dam, Oregon

CONTRACTOR

ACTIVITY NO	TRANSMITTAL NO	SPEC SECT	DESCRIPTION ITEM SUBMITTED	PARAG # RAPH	CLASSIFICATION	GOVT OR A/E REVWR	CONTRACTOR: SCHEDULE DATES			CONTRACTOR ACTION			APPROVING AUTHORITY				MAILED TO CONTR/ DATE RCD FRM APPR AUTH	REMARKS
							SUBMIT	APPROVAL NEEDED BY	MATERIAL NEEDED BY	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION	DATE FWD TO APPR AUTH/ DATE RCD FROM CONTR	DATE FWD TO OTHER REVIEWER	DATE RCD FROM OTH REVIEWER	ACTION CODE	DATE OF ACTION		
(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	(e)	(f)		(g)	(h)	(i)	(j)	(k)	(l)	(m)	(n)	(o)	(p)	(q)	(r)
		35 01 41.00 10	Operations and Maintenance (O&M) Manual	3.13	G													
		40 60 00	SD-02 Shop Drawings															
			Contractor Design Drawings	3.5.2	G													
			Draft As-Built Drawings	3.5.2.1	G													
			SD-03 Product Data															
			Control Drawings	3.5														
			Performance Verification Test (PVT)	3.6.2														
			Factory Test Procedure	2.9.2														
			SD-06 Test Reports															
			Factory Test Report	2.9.3														
			Testing, Adjusting and Commissioning	3.6.1														
			Performance Verification Test(PVT)	3.6.2														
			Endurance Test	3.6.3														
			SD-07 Certificates															
			Wiring	3.2.1														
			Installation	3.2.1														
			SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data															
			Training Manual	3.7	G													
			Control System	2.1	G													
			SD-11 Closeout Submittals															
			Final As-Built Drawings	3.5.2.2	G													

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

SECTION 01 42 00

SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS

05/24

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 01 42 00

SOURCES FOR REFERENCE PUBLICATIONS
05/24

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

Various publications are referenced in other sections of the specifications to establish requirements for the work. These references are identified in each section by document number, date and title. The document number used in the citation is the number assigned by the standards producing organization (e.g., ASTM B564 Standard Specification for Nickel Alloy Forgings). However, when the standards producing organization has not assigned a number to a document, an identifying number has been assigned for reference purposes.

1.2 ORDERING INFORMATION

The addresses of the standards publishing organizations whose documents are referenced in other sections of these specifications are listed below, and if the source of the publications is different from the address of the sponsoring organization, that information is also provided.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)
1400 Crystal Drive
Suite 430
Arlington, VA 22202
Ph: 703-358-2960

Internet: https://www.aluminum.org/

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS (AASHTO)
555 12th Street NW, Suite 1000
Washington, DC 20004
Ph: 202-624-5800
Fax: 202-624-5806
E-Mail: info@aashto.org
Internet: https://www.transportation.org/

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)
38800 Country Club Drive
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3439
Ph: 248-848-3800
Fax: 248-848-3701
Internet: https://www.concrete.org/

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)
130 East Randolph, Suite 2000
Chicago, IL 60601
Ph: 312-670-2400
Fax: 312-670-5403
Steel Solutions Center: 866-275-2472
E-mail: solutions@aisc.org
Internet: https://www.aisc.org/

AMERICAN LADDER INSTITUTE (ALI)
1300 Summer Avenue
Clevelan, OH 44115
Ph: 216-241-7333
Fax: 216-241-0105
E-mail: info@americanladderinstitute.org
Internet: https://www.americanladderinstitute.org

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)
1899 L Street, NW,11th Floor
Washington, DC 20036
Ph: 202-293-8020
Fax: 202-293-9287
E-mail: info@ansi.org
Internet: https://www.ansi.org/

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING (ASNT)
1201 Dublin Road Suite G04

Columbus, OH 43215-1045
Ph: 800-222-2768 or 614-274-6003

E-mail: customersupport@asnt.org
Internet: https://www.asnt.org/

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)
1801 Alexander Bell Drive
Reston, VA 20191
Ph: 800-548-2723; 703-295-6300
Email: customercare@asce.org
Internet: https://www.asce.org/

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)
180 Technology Parkway NW
Peachtree Corners, GA 30092
Ph: 404-636-8400 or 800-527-4723
Fax: 404-321-5478
E-mail: ashrae@ashrae.org
Internet: https://www.ashrae.org/

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)
Two Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990
Ph: 800-843-2763
Fax: 973-882-1717
E-mail: customercare@asme.org
Internet: https://www.asme.org/

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)
6666 W. Quincy Avenue
Denver, CO 80235 USA
Ph: 303-794-7711 or 800-926-7337
Fax: 303-347-0804
Internet: https://www.awwa.org/

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)
8669 NW 36 Street, #130

Miami, FL 33166-6672
Ph: 800-443-9353
Email: customercare@aws.org
Internet: https://www.aws.org/

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700
West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959
Ph: 610-832-9500
Fax: 610-832-9555
E-mail: service@astm.org
Internet: https://www.astm.org/

CSA GROUP (CSA)
178 Rexdale Blvd.
Toronto, ON, Canada M9W 1R3
Ph: 416-747-4044
Fax: 416-747-2510
E-mail: member@csagroup.org
Internet: https://www.csagroup.org/

ICC EVALUATION SERVICE, INC. (ICC-ES)
3060 Saturn Street, Suite 100
Brea, CA 92821
Ph: 800-423-6587
Fax: 562-695-4694
E-mail: es@icc-es.org
Internet: https://icc-es.org/

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)
445 and 501 Hoes Lane
Piscataway, NJ 08854-4141
Ph: 732-981-0060 or 800-701-4333
Fax: 732-981-9667
E-mail: onlinesupport@ieee.org
Internet: https://www.ieee.org/

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)
200 Massachusetts Ave, NW Suite 250
Washington, DC 20001
Ph: 800-786-4452 or 888-422-7233
Fax: 202-783-2348
E-mail: order@iccsafe.org
Internet: https://www.iccsafe.org/

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)
3050 Old Centre Ave. Suite 101
Portage, MI 49024
Ph: 269-488-6382 or 1-888-300-6382
Fax: 269-488-6383
Internet: https://www.netaworld.org/

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION (IEC)
3, rue de Varembe, 1st floor
P.O. Box 131
CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland
Ph: 41-22-919-02-11
Fax: 41-22-919-03-00

E-mail: info@iec.ch
Internet: https://www.iec.ch/

INTERNET ENGINEERING TASK FORCE (IETF)
c/o Association Management Solutions, LLC (AMS)
5177 Brandin Court
Fremont, California 94538
Ph: 510-492-4080
Fax: 510-492-4001
E-mail: ietf-info@ietf.org
Internet: https://www.ietf.org/

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)
2800 Ingleton Avenue
Burnaby, BC CANADA V5C 6G7
Ph: 1-888-674-8937
Fax: 1-888-211-8708
E-mail: info@paintinfo.com or techservices@mpi.net
Internet: http://www.mpi.net/

METAL FRAMING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (MFMA)
330 N. Wabash Avenue
Chicago, IL 60611
Ph: 312-644-6610
E-mail: MFMAstats@smithbucklin.com
Internet: http://www.metalframingmfg.org/

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)
800 Roosevelt Road, Bldg C, Suite 312
Glen Ellyn, IL 60137
Ph: 630-942-6591
Fax: 630-790-3095
E-mail: info@naamm.org
Internet: http://www.naamm.org

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NECA)
1201 Pennsylvania Ave. NW, Suite 1200
Washington, DC 20004
Ph: 202-991-6300
Fax: 202-217-4171
Internet: https://www.necanet.org/

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)
1300 North 17th Street, Suite 900
Arlington, VA 22209
Ph: 703-841-3200
Email: communications@nema.org
Internet: https://www.nema.org

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)
1 Batterymarch Park
Quincy, MA 02169-7471
Ph: 800-344-3555
Fax: 800-593-6372
Internet: https://www.nfpa.org

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)
100 Bureau Drive
Gaithersburg, MD 20899

Ph: 301-975-2000
Internet: https://www.nist.gov/

Oregon Department of Transportation, Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction
355 Capitol Street, NE, MS 11
Salem, OR 97301-3871
Ph: 888-275-6368
Internet: https://www.oregon.gov/odot/pages/index.aspx

RESEARCH COUNCIL ON STRUCTURAL CONNECTIONS (RCSC)
E-Mail: info@boltcouncil.org
Internet: http://www.boltcouncil.org

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)
800 Trumbull Drive
Pittsburgh, PA 15205
Ph: 877-281-7772 or 412-281-2331
Fax: 412-444-3591
E-mail: customerservice@sspc.org
Internet: http://www.sspc.org

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)
400 Commonwealth Drive
Warrendale, PA 15096
Ph: 877-606-7323 or 724-776-4841
Fax: 724-776-0790
E-mail: customerservice@sae.org
Internet: https://www.sae.org/

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)
1320 North Courthouse Rosd, Suite 200
Arlington, VA 22201
Ph: 703-907-7700
Fax: 703-907-7727
E-mail: marketing@tiaonline.org
Internet: https://www.tiaonline.org/

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)
CRD-C DOCUMENTS available on Internet:
http://www.wbdg.org/ffc/army-coe/standards
Order Other Documents from:
Official Publications of the Headquarters, USACE
E-mail: hqpublications@usace.army.mil
Internet: http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/
or
https://www.hnc.usace.army.mil/Missions/Engineering-Directorate/TECHINFO/

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)
Order DOD Documents from:
Room 3A750-The Pentagon
1400 Defense Pentagon
Washington, DC 20301-1400
Ph: 703-571-3343
Fax: 215-697-1462
E-mail: customerservice@ntis.gov
Internet: https://www.ntis.gov/
Obtain Military Specifications, Standards and Related Publications

from:
Acquisition Streamlining and Standardization Information System (ASSIST)
Department of Defense Single Stock Point (DODSSP)
Document Automation and Production Service (DAPS)
Building 4/D
700 Robbins Avenue
Philadelphia, PA 19111-5094
Ph: 215-697-6396 - for account/password issues
Internet: https://assist.dla.mil/online/start/; account registration required
Obtain Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) from:
Whole Building Design Guide (WBDG)
National Institute of Building Sciences (NIBS)
1090 Vermont Avenue NW, Suite 700
Washington, DC 20005
Ph: 202-289-7800
Fax: 202-289-1092
Internet:
https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-criteria-ufc

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)
8601 Adelphi Road
College Park, MD 20740-6001
Ph: 866-272-6272
Internet: https://www.archives.gov/
Order documents from:
Superintendent of Documents
U.S. Government Publishing Office (GPO)
732 N. Capitol Street, NW
Washington, DC 20401
Ph: 202-512-1800 or 866-512-1800
Bookstore: 202-512-0132
Internet: https://www.gpo.gov/

UL SOLUTIONS (UL)
333 Pfingsten Road
Northbrook, IL 60062
Ph: 877-854-3577 or 360-817-5500
E-mail: CustomerExperienceCenter@ul.com
Internet: https://www.ul.com/
UL Directories available through IHS at https://accuristech.com/

VIBRATION ISOLATION AND SEISMIC CONTROL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (VISCMA)
994 Old Eagle School Road
Suite 1019
Wayne, PA 19087-1866
Ph: 610-971-4850
E-mail: info@viscma.com
Internet: http://www.viscma.com

PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not used

PART 3 EXECUTION

Not used

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION 05 05 20

POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE AND MASONRY ANCHORS

05/22, CHG 1: 08/24

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 05 05 20

POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE AND MASONRY ANCHORS
05/22, CHG 1: 08/24

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN CONCRETE INSTITUTE (ACI)

ACI 355.2	(2007) Qualification of Post-Installed Mechanical Anchors in Concrete and Commentary
ACI 355.4	(2011) Qualification of Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete (ACI 355.4) and Commentary

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A153/A153M	(2023) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A193/A193M	(2024) Standard Specification for Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service and Other Special Purpose Applications
ASTM E488/E488M	(2022) Standard Test Methods for Strength of Anchors in Concrete Elements
ASTM F1554	(2020) Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC	(2024) International Building Code

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2024) Safety -- Safety and Occupational Health (SOH) Requirements

1.2 APPLICABILITY

This guide specification covers the requirements for all anchors that are post-installed into hardened concrete, concrete masonry, or brick. This guide specification does not cover through bolts, powder or pneumatic actuated nails, or cast in anchors. Refer to Section 05 50 13

MISCELLANEOUS METAL FABRICATIONS for requirements of through bolts, powder or pneumatic actuated nails, or cast in anchors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.3.1 Anchor

"Anchor" includes steel elements post-installed into hardened concrete, concrete masonry, or brick and used to transmit applied loads.

1.3.2 Periodic Special Inspections

"Periodic Special Inspection" as used herein means that, as a minimum, the Post-Installed Anchor Special Inspector must perform inspections in accordance with this specification.

1.3.3 Continuous Special Inspections

"Continuous Special Inspection" as used herein means that the Post-Installed Anchor Special Inspector observes the drilling and cleaning of holes, the injection of adhesive into the holes, and the insertion of anchors into the holes. When applicable for the type of installation, or as indicated in the project drawings, "Continuous Special Inspection" also includes observation of measures to secure the anchor during the adhesive curing period.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Installer Qualifications; G, [_____]

Post-Installed Anchor Special Inspector Qualifications; G, [_____]

SD-03 Product Data

Adhesive Anchor System in Concrete; G, [_____]

Non-Shrink, Non-Metallic Grout; G, [_____]

Fall Arrest Anchors

SD-06 Test Reports

Post-Installed Anchor Special Inspections Report; G, [_____]

SD-07 Certificates

Fall Arrest Anchor Certificates

Post-Installed Anchor Certification; G, [_____]

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Manufacturer's Printed Installation Instructions; G, [_____]

Non-Shrink, Non-Metallic Grout; G, [_____]

Manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Perform all work in accordance with EM 385-1-1 and all manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. To protect personnel from overexposure to toxic materials, conform to the applicable manufacturer's Safety Data Sheets (SDS) or local regulation. Submit the SDS for epoxies and other potentially hazardous materials.

1.5.1 Qualifications

The submittals must identify individuals who will be working on this contract and their relevant experience and training. Do not make changes in approved personnel without prior approval of the Contracting Officer.

1.5.1.1 Installer Qualifications

Each worker engaged in the installation of post-installed anchors must have satisfactorily completed an applicable certification program or equivalent instruction program through the manufacturer or manufacturer's representative for all anchoring products they will install. A manufacturer's representative must train all installers per the installation instructions as listed in the ICC-ES Evaluation Report for the anchor being installed. Training must consist of a review and performance test of the complete installation process, including but not limited to:

(1) Hole drilling procedure

(2) Hole preparation & cleaning technique

[(3) Adhesive injection technique & dispenser training / maintenance

][(4) Anchor/threaded rod preparation and installation

][(5) Rebar dowel preparation and installation

][(6) Proof loading/torquing

][(7) Installation in horizontal and upward orientations

] Submit certification for each worker showing that they have completed the above training within three years prior to onsite work. Certification must include organization or manufacturer's name, instructor's name and qualifications, trainee's name, list of instruction received, date of instruction, and confirmation of successful performance tests.

1.5.1.2 Post-Installed Anchor Special Inspector Qualifications

The Contractor must retain the services of a third party Special Inspector independent of the installing contractor and manufacturer. The individual(s) who perform special inspections for post-installed anchors

must meet all Installer Qualification requirements and have a minimum of [1][3][5] year[s] of experience as a Special Inspector on previous projects involving similar scope of work. Submit resumes, pertinent information, past experience, and training.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.6.1 Packing, Shipping, Handling, and Unloading

Deliver products to job site in manufacturer's or distributor's original packaging undamaged, complete with installation instructions. Inspect materials delivered to site for damage. Unload and store with minimal handling.

1.6.2 Storage

Protect, store, and handle materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations to prevent damage or deterioration. Do not allow chemical materials to freeze. Remove materials that have not be stored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, including expired materials, from the job site.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Post-Installed Anchors

Provide anchors of the type, effective embedment, and diameter indicated on contract drawings. Minimum spacing and concrete edge distances must be as shown on contract drawings. Design values listed must be as tested according to ASTM E488/E488M for the substrate type, substrate moisture condition, concrete aggregate type (normal weight or lightweight concrete), and concrete/masonry strength. Minimum allowable strength tension and shear values must be as indicated on contract drawings.

2.1.1.1 Post-Installed Anchor Certification

Submit product information with recommended design values and physical characteristics for each type anchor shown on the drawings.

Provide certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties. Anchors must have one of the following certifications:

(1) ICC-ES Evaluation Report indicating conformance with current applicable ICC ES Acceptance Criteria

(2) Third party Evaluation Report in conformance with ACI 355.2 or ACI 355.4, as applicable. Third party must be accredited under ISO/IEC 17025 by a recognized accreditation body conforming to the requirements of ISO/IEC 17011 in accordance with ACI 355.4."

2.1.1.2 Manufacturer's Printed Installation Instructions

Submit manufacturer's instructions for each anchor type shown on the drawings.

2.1.1.3 Adhesive Anchor System in Concrete

Use an adhesive to bond steel anchors to concrete. The adhesive must be a moisture insensitive, structural adhesive. Anchors must have been tested and qualified for performance in cracked and uncracked concrete, horizontal and overhead applications, and long-term creep in accordance with ACI 355.4.

Threaded rod anchors must meet the requirements of ASTM F1554 Grade 36 (for handrail anchors only) and 55 or ASTM A193/A193M Grade B8M only where noted on the drawings. Threaded rods must be galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or stainless steel in accordance with ASTM A193/A193M unless otherwise indicated.

Adhesive anchors must have the below characteristic bond strengths for uncracked and cracked concrete in 4500 psi concrete with maximum short term temperatures of 100 degrees F and maximum long term temperatures of 80 degrees F:

ANCHOR	Tau,uncr (characteristic bond strength, uncracked concrete) (psi)	Tau,cr (characteristic bond strength, cracked concrete) (psi)
3/4" diameter threaded rod	19,000	17,000

2.1.2 Post-Installed Fall Arrest Anchors

Provide concrete post-installed Fall Arrest Anchors for fall arrest tie off locations as shown on the drawings. The anchors shall be of a swivel D-ring style and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. All anchors must have a load capacity of 5000 lbs in accordance with OSHA 1926 and EM 385-1-1. Contractor to provide Fall Arrest Anchor Certificates confirming the tie off point is suitable for use.

2.2 EQUIPMENT

Assemble at the site of the work, sufficient equipment that is dependable, appropriate and adequate to accomplish the work specified. Maintain the equipment in good working condition.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 ANCHORING AND REINFORCING

Install anchors in accordance with the spacing and edge clearances indicated on the drawings. Anchor capacity is also highly dependent on proper installation. Follow all manufacturer and Evaluation Report installation instructions.

3.1.1 Drilling and Installing Adhesive Anchors

Drill holes for anchors using drilling equipment and bits suitable for the intended purpose, in accordance with Manufacturer's Printed Installation Instructions and Evaluation Report installation instructions. Diameter of holes must be as recommended by the anchor manufacturer. Unless otherwise

shown on the drawings, all holes must be drilled perpendicular to the concrete surface. Deviations more than 10 degrees from perpendicular are not acceptable. Unless otherwise specified, do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength. Adhesive anchors must not be installed in concrete that is less than 21 days old.

Clean holes, place grout, and install anchors in accordance with anchor manufacturer's recommendations. Remove excess adhesive after the anchor has been set in place. Remove spills on adjacent surfaces. Protect threads and anchor from damage during anchor installation. Ensure proper embedment and placement in accordance with contract documents and all other work. Do not disturb or load anchors before manufacturer specified cure time has elapsed.

Adhesives must be stored at temperatures prescribed by the manufacturer and must not be used beyond the expiration date.

3.1.2 Unused or Repairs to Drilled Holes

Any holes made for anchors that are not used must be filled with non-shrink, non metallic grout suitable for the orientation and size of hole and have a minimum compressive strength of 4000 psi. Repair must completely fill hole and be flush with existing concrete or masonry. Place in accordance with manufacturer's recommended instructions. Final anchor positions must not be within1 inch of repair patches.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

Existing reinforcing bars or other embedded items in the structure may conflict with specified anchor locations. Existing reinforcing and embedded items MUST NOT be damaged during installation of post-installed anchors.

The contractor must review the project drawings and must use Radar detection systems (such as Hilti Ferroscan), X-Ray, or other appropriate means to accurately locate the position of existing reinforcing bars and embedded items at the locations of the anchors in the field.

Create a template at each anchor connection location prior to fabricating holes in connection plates. Template must be made by locating existing reinforcing with an approved reinforcement detection system.

3.3 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

3.3.1 Adhesive Anchors

For adhesive anchors, periodic special inspection are required as a minimum. Where adhesive anchors are used to resist sustained tension in horizontal or upwardly inclined orientations, or where the findings of the Evaluation Report for the adhesive anchor product require it, continuous special inspection is needed. Inspections must be in accordance with ICC IBC and the Evaluation Report.

Adhesive anchors must be inspected during installation, to verify anchor type, anchor dimensions, base material type, base material age, drill bit, hole dimensions, hole cleaning procedures, anchor spacing, edge distances, base material thickness, effective embedment, tightening torque, adhesive mixing, filling of the hole with adhesive, adherence to the manufacturer's

printed installation instructions, and any additional items recommended in the Evaluation Report.

The Special Inspector must perform proof loading on the first three anchors of each type and size, for each installer, and a minimum of 10 percent of randomly selected anchors. Anchor selection will be determined by the Engineer of Record. Perform confined tension proof load testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M. Use incremental loading for tensile test. Maintain proof load for a minimum of 10 seconds. Consider anchors to have failed if displacement exceeds 0.1 inch D/10, where D is the nominal anchor diameter, or if any of the failure modes listed in ASTM E488/E488M occur.

Adhesive anchors and capsule anchors must not be torque tested.

Proof loads must be the minimum of the value shown on the Drawings, the values shown in the table below, or 50 percent of the tension capacity of the anchor:

ANCHOR	EFFECTIVE EMBEDMENT (inches)	CONFINED TENSION PROOF LOAD (pounds)
Adhesive anchor, 3/4" diameter rod	8.5" (min)	[_____]

3.3.2 Action Required from Failed Tests/Inspections

Immediately report failed anchor locations and test results to the Contracting Officer. Anchors that fail to meet proof/torque load or installation requirements must be regarded as malfunctioning. Do not re-use holes unless specifically allowed by manufacturer's published instructions and approved by the Post-Installed Anchor Special Inspector.

If any of the tested anchors fail to achieve the specified torque or proof load within the limits of the contract documents, test a minimum of two adjacent anchors for each anchor that fails.

Continuously special inspect and proof load/torque test any replacement anchors.

Fill unused anchor holes and patch failed anchor locations in accordance with this specification. Prior to performing the repair, the Contractor must submit to the Contracting Officer for approval, the proposed fill and patch materials.

Additional tests, repairs, delays, or modification of work to accommodate failed tests will be at no cost to the Government.

3.3.3 Post-Installed Anchor Special Inspections Report

Report the results of all inspections daily. Submit report as an electronic PDF file to the Contracting Officer for review by the Engineer of Record. The report must include the following:

(1) Exact locations of the inspected and tested work

(2) Inspector's name

(3) Date of inspection

(4) Summary of work completed during the inspection period

(5) Test results

(6) Statement by the Special Inspector that clearly identifies the tested anchors as being acceptable or rejected.

(7) Statement by the Special Inspector confirming that the materials and installation procedures conform with the approved contract documents and the manufacturer's published installation instructions.

3.4 DUST CONTROL

Control dust resulting from demolition to prevent the spread of dust and avoid creation of a nuisance in the surrounding area. Do not use water when it will result in, or create, hazardous or objectionable conditions such as ice, flooding, or pollution.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION 05 05 23.16

STRUCTURAL WELDING

08/18

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 05 05 23.16

STRUCTURAL WELDING
08/18

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 360	(2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING (ASNT)

ANSI/ASNT CP-189	(2020) ASNT Standard for Qualification and Certification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A2.4	(2012) Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing and Nondestructive Examination
AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel
AWS D1.3/D1.3M	(2018) Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel
AWS D1.4/D1.4M	(2018) Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel
AWS D1.8/D1.8M	(2016) Structural Welding Code—Seismic Supplement
AWS D14.4/D14.4M	(2012) Specification for Welded Joints for Machinery and Equipment
AWS QC1	(2016) Specification for AWS Certification of Welding Inspectors
AWS Z49.1	(2021) Safety in Welding and Cutting and Allied Processes

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM E165/E165M	(2023) Standard Practice for Liquid Penetrant Examination for General Industry
ASTM E709	(2021) Standard Guide for Magnetic Particle Testing

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Welding Quality Assurance Plan; G, [_____]

SD-03 Product Data

Welding Procedure Qualifications; G, [_____]

Welder, Welding Operator, and Tacker Qualification

Previous Qualifications

Pre-Qualified Procedures; G, [_____]

Welding Electrodes and Rods

SD-06 Test Reports

Nondestructive Testing

Weld Inspection Log

SD-07 Certificates

Certified Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS)

Certified Brazing Procedure Specifications (BPS)

Certified Procedure Qualification Records (PQR)

Certified Welder Performance Qualifications (WPQ)

Certified Brazer Performance Qualifications (BPQ)

Certified Welding Inspector

Nondestructive Testing Personnel

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Except for pre-qualified (in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M) and previously qualified procedures, each Contractor performing welding must record in detail and qualify the welding procedure specification for any welding procedure followed in the fabrication of weldments. Conform welding procedure qualifications to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, AWS D1.8/D1.8M and to the specifications in this section. Submit for approval copies of the welding procedure specification and the procedure qualification records for each type of welding being performed. Submission of the welder,

welding operator, or tacker qualification test records is also required. Approval of any procedure, however, does not relieve the Contractor of the sole responsibility for producing a finished structure meeting all the specified requirements. Submit this information on the forms in Annex M of AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Individually identify and clearly reference on the detail drawings and erection drawings all welding procedure specifications, or suitably key them to the contract drawings. In case of conflict between this specification and AWS D1.1/D1.1M, this specification governs.

1.3.1 General Requirements

Fabricate work in an AISC Certified Fabrication Plant, Category BU. Erect work by an AISC Certified Erector, Category CSE.

a. For Structural Projects, provide documentation of the following:

(1) Component Thickness 1/8 inch and greater: Qualification documents (WPS, PQR, and WPQ) in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M.

(2) Component Thickness Less than 1/8 inch: Qualification documents (WPS, PQR, and WPQ) in accordance with AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

(3) Reinforcing Steel: Qualification documents (WPS, PQR, and WPQ) in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.

b. For other applications, provide documentation of the following:

(1) Submit two copies of the Certified Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS), Certified Brazing Procedure Specifications (BPS) and Certified Procedure Qualification Records (PQR) to the Contracting Officer for approval.

(2) Submit two copies of the Certified Welder Performance Qualifications (WPQ)and Certified Brazer Performance Qualifications (BPQ) to the Contracting Officer for approval within fifteen calendar days prior to any employee welding on the project material.

(3) Machinery: Qualification documents (WPS, PQR, and WPQ) in accordance with AWS D14.4/D14.4M.

1.3.2 Previous Qualifications

Welding procedures previously qualified by test in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, may be accepted for this contract without re-qualification, upon receipt of the test results, if the following conditions are met:

a. Testing was performed by an approved testing laboratory, technical consultant, or the Contractor's approved quality control organization.

b. The qualified welding procedure conforms to the requirements of this specification and is applicable to welding conditions encountered under this contract.

c. The welder, welding operator, and tacker qualification tests conform to the requirements of this specification and are applicable to

welding conditions encountered under this contract.

1.3.3 Pre-qualified Procedures

Welding procedures which are considered pre-qualified as specified in AWS D1.1/D1.1M will be accepted without further qualification. Submit for approval a listing or an annotated drawing to indicate the joints not pre-qualified. Procedure qualification is mandatory for these joints.

1.3.4 Welder, Welding Operator, and Tacker Qualification

Each welder, welding operator, and tacker assigned to work on this contract must be qualified in accordance with the applicable requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, AWS D1.8/D1.8M and as specified in this section. Welders, welding operators, and tackers who make acceptable procedure qualification test welds will be considered qualified for the welding procedure used within the applicable essential variables for welder qualification.

1.3.4.1 Previous Personnel Qualifications

At the discretion of the Contracting Officer, welders, welding operators, and tackers qualified by test within the previous 6 months may be accepted for this contract without re-qualification if all the following conditions are met:

a. Copies of the welding procedure specifications, the procedure qualification test records, and the welder, welding operator, and tacker qualification test records are submitted and approved in accordance with the specified requirements for detail drawings.

b. Testing was performed by an approved testing laboratory, technical consultant, or the Contractor's approved quality control organization.

c. The welder, welding operator, and tacker qualification tests conform to the requirements of this specification and are applicable to welding conditions encountered under this contract.

1.3.4.2 Certificates

Before assigning any welder, welding operator, or tacker to work under this contract, submit the names and certification that each individual is qualified as specified. State in the certification the type of welding and positions for which the welder, welding operator, or tacker is qualified, the code and procedure under which the individual is qualified, the date qualified, and the name of the firm and person certifying the qualification tests. Keep the certification current, on file, and furnish 3 copies.

1.3.4.3 Renewal of Qualification

Re-qualification of a welder or welding operator is required under any of the following conditions:

a. It has been more than 6 months since the welder or welding operator has used the specific welding process for which he is qualified.

b. There is specific reason to question the welder or welding operator's ability to make welds that meet the requirements of these

specifications.

c. The welder or welding operator was qualified by an employer other than those firms performing work under this contract, and a qualification test has not been taken within the past 12 months. Submit as evidence of conformance all records showing periods of employment, name of employer where welder, or welding operator, was last employed, and the process for which qualified.

d. A tacker who passes the qualification test is considered eligible to perform tack welding indefinitely in the positions and with the processes for which he/she is qualified, unless there is some specific reason to question the tacker's ability or there has been a gap greater than 6 months since he/she last used the process. In such a case, the tacker is required to pass the prescribed tack welding test.

1.3.5 Inspector Qualification

Submit certificates indicating that certified welding inspectors meet the requirements of AWS QC1. Submit qualifications for nondestructive testing personnel in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/ASNT CP-189 for Levels I or II in the applicable nondestructive testing method. Level I inspectors must have direct supervision of a Level II inspector.

1.3.6 Symbols and Safety

Use symbols in accordance with AWS A2.4, unless otherwise indicated. Follow safe welding practices and safety precautions during welding in conformance with AWS Z49.1.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Conform the design of welded connections to AISC 360, unless otherwise indicated or specified. Material with welds will not be accepted unless the welding is specified or indicated on the drawings or otherwise approved. Perform welding as specified in this section, except where additional requirements are shown on the drawings or are specified in other sections. Do not commence welding until welding procedures, inspectors, nondestructive testing personnel, welders, welding operators, and tackers have been qualified and the submittals approved by the Contracting Officer. Perform all testing at or near the work site. Maintain records of the test results obtained in welding procedure, welder, welding operator, and tacker performance qualifications.

2.1.1 Pre-erection Conference

Hold a pre-erection conference prior to the start of the field welding, to bring all affected parties together and to gain a naturally clear understanding of the project and the Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS) (submitted for all welding, including welding done using pre-qualified procedures). Mandatory attendance is required by all Contractor's welding production and inspection personnel and appropriate Government personnel. Include as items for discussion: responsibilities of various parties; welding procedures and processes to be followed; welding sequence (both within a joint and joint sequence within the building); inspection requirements and procedures, both visual and nondestructive testing; welding schedule; and other items deemed necessary

by the attendees.

2.2 WELDING EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

Provide all welding equipment, welding electrodes and rods, welding wire, and fluxes capable of producing satisfactory welds when used by a qualified welder or welding operator. Use E70XX welding electrodes. Provide welding equipment and materials that comply with the applicable requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M. Submit product data on welding electrodes and rods.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 WELDING OPERATIONS

3.1.1 Requirements

Conform workmanship and techniques for welded construction to the requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, AWS D1.8/D1.8M and AISC 360. When AWS D1.1/D1.1M, AWS D1.8/D1.8M and the AISC 360 specification conflict, the requirements of AWS D1.8/D1.8M govern.

3.1.2 Identification

Identify all welds in one of the following ways:

a. Submit written records to indicate the location of welds made by each welder, welding operator, or tacker.

b. Identify all work performed by each welder, welding operator, or tacker with an assigned number, letter, or symbol to identify welds made by that individual. The Contracting Officer may require welders, welding operators, and tackers to apply their symbol next to the weld by means of rubber stamp, felt-tipped marker with waterproof ink, or other methods that do not cause an indentation in the metal. Place the identification mark for seam welds adjacent to the weld at 3 foot intervals. Identification with die stamps or electric etchers is not allowed.

3.2 QUALITY CONTROL

Perform testing using an approved inspection or testing laboratory or technical consultant; or if approved, the Contractor's inspection and testing personnel may be used instead of the commercial inspection or testing laboratory or technical consultant. A Certified Welding Inspector must perform visual inspection on 100 percent of all welds. Document this inspection in the Visual Weld Inspection Log. Test 100% of CJP welds using ultrasonic testing per Table 6.2 of AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Randomly test 50% of all PJP and fillet welds or as indicated by magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing. Verify the welds conform to paragraph STANDARDS OF ACCEPTANCE. Conform procedures and techniques for inspection with applicable requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, AWS D1.8/D1.8M, ASTM E165/E165M, and ASTM E709. Submit a Welding Quality Assurance Plan and records of tests and inspections.

3.3 STANDARDS OF ACCEPTANCE

Conform dimensional tolerances for welded construction, details of welds, and quality of welds with the applicable requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M,

AWS D1.8/D1.8M and the contract drawings. Submit all records of nondestructive testing.

3.3.1 Nondestructive Testing

The welding is subject to inspection and tests in the mill, shop, and field. Inspection and tests in the mill or shop do not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to furnish weldments of satisfactory quality. When materials or workmanship do not conform to the specification requirements, the Government reserves the right to reject material or workmanship or both at any time before final acceptance of the structure containing the weldment. Any indication of a defect is regarded as a defect, unless re-evaluation by nondestructive methods or by surface conditioning shows that no unacceptable defect is present. Submit all records of nondestructive testing in accordance with paragraph STANDARDS OF ACCEPTANCE.

3.3.2 Destructive Tests

Make all repairs when metallographic specimens are removed from any part of a structure. Employ only qualified welders or welding operators, and use the proper joints and welding procedures, including peening or heat treatment if required, to develop the full strength of the members and joints cut and to relieve residual stress.

3.4 GOVERNMENT INSPECTION AND TESTING

In addition to the inspection and tests performed by the Contractor for quality control, the Government will perform inspection and testing for acceptance to the extent determined by the Contracting Officer. The work may be performed by the Government's own forces or under a separate contract for inspection and testing. The Government reserves the right to perform supplemental nondestructive and destructive tests to determine compliance with paragraph STANDARDS OF ACCEPTANCE.

3.5 CORRECTIONS AND REPAIRS

If inspection or testing indicates defects in the weld joints, repair defective welds using a qualified welder or welding operator as applicable. Conduct corrections in accordance with the requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, AWS D1.8/D1.8M and the specifications. Repair all defects in accordance with the approved procedures. Repair defects discovered between passes before additional weld material is deposited. Wherever a defect is removed and repair by welding is not required, blend the affected area into the surrounding surface to eliminate sharp notches, crevices, or corners. After a defect is thought to have been removed, and before re-welding, examine the area by suitable methods to ensure that the defect has been eliminated. Repaired welds must meet the inspection requirements for the original welds.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION 05 12 00

STRUCTURAL STEEL

08/18, CHG 2: 05/21

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 05 12 00

STRUCTURAL STEEL
08/18, CHG 2: 05/21

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA)

AA ADM	(2020) Aluminum Design Manual

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 207	(2016; R 2017) Certification Standard for Steel Fabrication and Erection, and Manufacturing of Metal Components
AISC 325	(2017) Steel Construction Manual
AISC 326	(2009) Detailing for Steel Construction
AISC 341	(2016) Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings
AISC 360	(2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings
AISC DESIGN GUIDE 10	(1997) Erection Bracing of Low-Rise Structural Steel Buildings
ANSI/AISC 303	(2022) Code of Standard Practice for Structural Steel Buildings and Bridges

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B4.1	(1967; R 1994; R 2004; R 2009; R 2020) Preferred Limits and Fits for Cylindrical Parts
ASME B46.1	(2020) Surface Texture, Surface Roughness, Waviness and Lay

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A2.4	(2012) Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing and Nondestructive Examination
AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel
AWS D1.8/D1.8M	(2016) Structural Welding Code—Seismic

Supplement

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A6/A6M	(2024b) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates, Shapes, and Sheet Piling
ASTM A36/A36M	(2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A53/A53M	(2024) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A123/A123M	(2024) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A307	(2021) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A500/A500M	(2023) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes
ASTM A563	(2021; E 2022a) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts
ASTM A572/A572M	(2021; E 2021) Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel
ASTM A780/A780M	(2020) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
ASTM A992/A992M	(2022) Standard Specification for Structural Steel Shapes
ASTM B695	(2021) Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel
ASTM C827/C827M	(2023) Standard Test Method for Change in Height at Early Ages of Cylindrical Specimens of Cementitious Mixtures
ASTM C1107/C1107M	(2020) Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
ASTM F436/F436M	(2019) Standard Specification for Hardened Steel Washers Inch and Metric Dimensions
ASTM F844	(2019; R 2024) Standard Specification for Washers, Steel, Plain (Flat), Unhardened for General Use

ASTM F959/F959M	(2017a; R 2023) Standard Specification for Compressible-Washer-Type Direct Tension Indicators for Use with Structural Fasteners, Inch and Metric Series
ASTM F1136/F1136M	(2011) Standard Specification for Zinc/Aluminum Corrosion Protective Coatings for Fasteners
ASTM F1554	(2020) Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength
ASTM F2329/F2329M	(2015; R 2023) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating, Hot-Dip, Requirements for Application to Carbon and Alloy Steel Bolts, Screws, Washers, Nuts, and Special Threaded Fasteners
ASTM F2833	(2011; R 2017) Standard Specification for Corrosion Protective Fastener Coatings with Zinc Rich Base Coat and Aluminum Organic/Inorganic Type
ASTM F3125/F3125M	(2019) Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts and Assemblies, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, Inch Dimensions 120 ksi and 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, and Metric Dimensions 830 MPa and 1040 MPa Minimum Tensile Strength

RESEARCH COUNCIL ON STRUCTURAL CONNECTIONS (RCSC)

RCSC A348	(2020) RCSC Specification for Structural Joints Using High-strength Bolts

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

UFC 3-301-01	(2023; with Change 2, 2024) Structural Engineering

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR Part 1926, Subpart R	Steel Erection

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Erection and Erection Bracing Drawings; G

Welding Quality Assurance Plan; G

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings Including Details of Connections; G

Welding Procedures; G

Welding Repair Plan

Castings

SD-03 Product Data

Welding Electrodes and Rods

Direct Tension Indicator Washers

Non-Shrink Grout

Tension Control Bolts

Recycled Content for Structural Steel; S

Recycled Content for Structural Steel Tubing; S

Recycled Content for Steel Pipe; S

Welding Procedure Qualifications; G

Welder, Welding Operator, and Tacker Qualification

Previous Qualifications

Pre-Qualified Procedures; G

Application Qualification For Steel Studs

SD-05 Design Data

Design Calculations for Steel Connections; G

Shoring and Temporary Bracing; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

Bolt Testing Reports

Nondestructive Testing

Weld Inspection Log

Tests, Inspections, And Verifications

SD-07 Certificates

Steel

Bolts, Nuts, and Washers

Galvanizing

AISC Structural Steel Fabricator Quality Certification

AISC Structural Steel Erector Quality Certification

Welding Procedures and Qualifications

Welding Electrodes and Rods

Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS)

Certified Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS)

Certified Procedure Qualification Records (PQR)

Certified Welder Performance Qualifications (WPQ)

Nondestructive Testing Personnel

1.3 AISC QUALITY CERTIFICATION

Work must be fabricated by an AISC Certified Structural Steel Fabricator, in accordance with AISC 207, Category BU. Submit AISC Structural Steel Fabricator quality certification.

Work must be erected by an AISC Structural Steel Certified Erector, in accordance with AISC 207, Category CSE. Submit AISC Structural Steel erector quality certification.

1.4 SEISMIC PROVISIONS

Provide the structural steel system in accordance with AISC 341, Chapter J as amended by UFC 3-301-01.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Refer to the quality requirements for shop and field welding of structural steel per Section 05 05 23.16 STRUCTURAL WELDING.

1.5.1 Preconstruction Submittals

1.5.1.1 Erection and Erection Bracing Drawings

Submit for record purposes. Indicate the sequence of erection, temporary shoring and bracing. The erection drawings must conform to ANSI/AISC 303.

1.5.2 Fabrication Drawing Requirements

Submit fabrication drawings for approval prior to fabrication. Prepare in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303, AISC 326 and AISC 325. Fabrication drawings must not be reproductions of contract drawings. Include complete information for the fabrication and erection of the structure's components, including the location, type, and size of bolts, welds, member sizes and lengths, connection details, blocks, copes, and cuts. Use

AWS A2.4 standard welding symbols. Shoring and temporary bracing must be designed and sealed by a registered professional engineer and submitted for record purposes, with calculations, as part of the drawings. Clearly highlight any deviations from the details shown on the contract drawings highlighted on the fabrication drawings. Explain the reasons for any deviations from the contract drawings.

Submit detail drawings for metalwork and machine work, prior to fabrication, include within the detail drawings catalog cuts, templates, fabrication and assembly details and type, grade and class of material as appropriate. Indicate methods of protecting the work during shipping, storage, field assembly, and installation.

1.5.3 Delegated Connection Design

Design structural steel components associated with the trashrake and support brackets per ANSI/AISC 303, Option 3, using the connection loads indicated. Submit design calculations for steel connections signed and sealed by a registered professional engineer.

1.5.4 Certifications

1.5.4.1 Welding Procedures and Qualifications

Prior to welding, submit certification for each welder stating the type of welding and positions qualified for, the code and procedure qualified under, date qualified, and the firm and individual certifying the qualification tests. If the qualification date of the welder or welding operator is more than 6 months old, the welding operator's qualification certificate must be accompanied by a current certificate by the welder attesting to the fact that he has been engaged in welding since the date of certification, with no break in welding service greater than 6 months.

Conform to all requirements specified in AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Provide the structural steel system, including shop primer, coating, galvanizing, complete and ready for use. Provide structural steel systems including design, materials, installation, workmanship, fabrication, assembly, erection, inspection, quality control, and testing in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303, AISC 360, AISC 341, and UFC 3-301-01 except as modified in this contract.

Conform the design of welded connections to AISC 360, unless otherwise indicated or specified. Material with welds will not be accepted unless the welding is specified or indicated on the drawings or otherwise approved. Perform welding as specified in this section, except where additional requirements are shown on the drawings or are specified in other sections. Do not commence welding until welding procedures, inspectors, nondestructive testing personnel, welders, welding operators, and tackers have been qualified and the submittals approved by the Contracting Officer. Perform all testing at or near the work site. Maintain records of the test results obtained in welding procedure, welder, welding operator, and tacker performance qualifications.

2.1.1 Pre-erection Conference

Hold a pre-erection conference prior to the start of the field welding, to bring all affected parties together and to gain a naturally clear understanding of the project and the Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS) (submitted for all welding, including welding done using pre-qualified procedures). Mandatory attendance is required by all Contractor's welding production and inspection personnel and appropriate Government personnel. Include as items for discussion: responsibilities of various parties; welding procedures and processes to be followed; welding sequence (both within a joint and joint sequence within the building); inspection requirements and procedures, both visual and nondestructive testing; welding schedule; and other items deemed necessary by the attendees.

2.2 STEEL

2.2.1 Structural Steel

Wide flange and WT shapes, ASTM A992/A992M. Angles, Channels and Plates, ASTM A36/A36M. Provide structural steel containing a minimum of 80 percent recycled content. Submit data identifying percentage of recycled content for structural steel.

2.2.2 Structural Steel Tubing

ASTM A500/A500M, Grade C. Provide structural steel tubing containing a minimum of 50 percent recycled content. Submit data identifying percentage of recycled content for structural steel tubing.

2.2.3 Steel Pipe

ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or S, Grade B, weight class or as indicated. Provide steel pipe containing a minimum of 50 percent recycled content. Submit data identifying percentage of recycled content for steel pipe.

2.2.4 Steel Plates

ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50. Provide structural steel plates containing a minimum of 50 percent recycled content. Submit data identifying percentage of recycled content for structural steel plates.

2.3 BOLTS, NUTS, AND WASHERS

Submit the certified manufacturer's mill reports which clearly show the applicable ASTM mechanical and chemical requirements together with the actual test results for the supplied fasteners.

2.3.1 Common Grade Bolts

2.3.1.1 Bolts

ASTM A307, Grade A, plain finish . The bolt heads and the nuts of the supplied fasteners must be marked with the manufacturer's identification mark, the strength grade and type specified by ASTM specifications.

2.3.1.2 Nuts

ASTM A563, Grade A, heavy hex style.

2.3.1.3 Washers

ASTM F844.

2.3.2 High-Strength Bolts

High strength bolts and nuts must be shipped together in the same shipping container. Fasteners indicated to be galvanized shall be tested by the supplier to show that the galvanized nut with the supplied lubricant provided may be rotated from the snug tight condition well in excess of the rotation required for pretentioned installation without stripping. The supplier shall supply nuts that have been lubricated and tested with the supplied bolts.

2.3.2.1 Bolts

ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325M A325 , Type 1 Heavy Hex Head Style, plain finish.

2.3.2.2 Nuts

ASTM A563, Grade and Style as specified in the applicable ASTM bolt standard.

2.3.2.3 Direct Tension Indicator Washers

ASTM F959/F959M.[Provide ASTM B695, Class 55, Type 1 galvanizing.] Submit product data for direct tension indicator washers.

2.3.2.4 Washers

ASTM F436/F436M, plain carbon steel.

2.3.3 Foundation Anchorage

2.3.3.1 Anchor Rods

ASTM F1554 Gr 105, Class 2A.

2.3.3.2 Anchor Nuts

ASTM A563, Grade A, hex style.

2.3.3.3 Anchor Washers

ASTM F844.

2.3.3.4 Anchor Plate Washers

ASTM A36/A36M.

2.4 STRUCTURAL STEEL ACCESSORIES

2.4.1 Welding Electrodes and Rods

AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M. Submit product data for welding electrodes and rods.

2.4.2 Non-Shrink Grout

ASTM C1107/C1107M, with no ASTM C827/C827M shrinkage. Submit product data for non-shrink grout.

2.5 GALVANIZING

ASTM F2329/F2329M, ASTM F1136/F1136M, ASTM F2833 or ASTM B695 for threaded parts or ASTM A123/A123M for structural steel members, as applicable, unless specified otherwise galvanize after fabrication where practicable.

2.6 FABRICATION

Fabrication must be in accordance with the applicable provisions of AISC 325. Fabrication and assembly must be done in the shop to the greatest extent possible. Punch, subpunch and ream, or drill bolt [and pin] holes perpendicular to the surface of the member.

Compression joints depending on contact bearing must have a surface roughness not in excess of 500 micro inch as determined by ASME B46.1, and ends must be square within the tolerances for milled ends specified in ASTM A6/A6M.

Shop splices of members between field splices will be permitted only where indicated on the Contract Drawings. Splices not indicated require the approval of the Contracting Officer.

Do not splice truss top and bottom chords except as approved by the Contracting Officer. Provide chord splices at panel joints at approximately the third point of the span. The center of gravity lines of truss members must intersect at panel points unless otherwise approved by the Contracting Officer. When the center of gravity lines do not intersect at a panel point, make provisions for the stresses due to eccentricity. Camber of trusses must be 1/8 inch in 10 feet unless otherwise indicated.2.6.1 Markings

Prior to erection, identify members by a painted erection mark. Connecting parts assembled in the shop for reaming holes in field connections must be match marked with scratch and notch marks. Do not locate erection markings on areas to be welded. Do not locate match markings in areas that will decrease member strength or cause stress concentrations. Affix emboxed tags to hot-dipped galvanized members.

2.7 DRAINAGE HOLES

Drill adequate drainage holes to eliminate water traps. Hole diameter must be 1/2 inch and location indicated on the detail drawings. Hole size and locations must not affect the structural integrity.

2.8 WELDING EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

Provide all welding equipment, welding electrodes and rods, welding wire, and fluxes capable of producing satisfactory welds when used by a qualified welder or welding operator. Provide welding equipment and materials that comply with the applicable requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M. Submit product data on welding electrodes and rods.

2.9 METAL FABRICATIONS

2.9.1 Structural Fabrication

Material must be straight before being laid off or worked. Perform straightening, if necessary, by methods that will not impair the metal. Sharp kinks or bends are cause for rejection of the material. Material with welds will not be accepted except where welding is definitely specified, indicated or otherwise approved. Make bends using approved dies, press brakes or bending rolls. Where heating is required, take precautions to avoid overheating the metal and allow it to cool in a manner that will not impair the original properties of the metal. Proposed flame cutting of material, other than structural steel, is subject to approval and must be indicated on detail drawings. Shearing must be accurate and all portions of the work neatly finished. Make corners square and true unless otherwise shown. Fillet re-entrant cuts to a minimum radius of 3/4 inch unless otherwise approved. Provide finished members free of twists, bends and open joints. Tighten bolts, nuts and screws.

2.9.2 Dimensional Tolerances for Structural Work

Measure dimensions using an approved calibrated steel tape of approximately the same temperature as the material being measured. The overall dimensions of an assembled structural unit must be within the tolerances indicated on the drawings or as specified in the particular section of these specifications for the item of work. Where tolerances are not specified in other sections of these specifications or shown, an allowable variation of 1/32 inch is permissible in the overall length of component members with both ends milled; component members without milled ends must not deviate from the dimensions shown by more than 1/16 inch for members 30 feet or less in length, and by more than 1/8 inch for members over 30 feet in length.

2.9.3 Structural Steel Fabrication

Structural steel may be cut by mechanically guided or hand-guided torches, provided an accurate profile with a surface that is smooth and free from cracks and notches is obtained. Prepare surfaces and edges in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Prequalification of WPSs Clause. Where structural steel is not to be welded, chipping or grinding will not be required except as necessary to remove slag and sharp edges of mechanically guided or hand-guided cuts not exposed to view. Chip, grind or machine to sound metal hand-guided cuts which are to be exposed or visible.

2.9.4 Structural Aluminum Fabrication

Lay out and cut aluminum in accordance with the AA ADM, Section 6.

2.9.5 Welding

2.9.5.1 Welding of Structural Steel

2.9.5.1.1 Welding Procedures for Structural Steel

Use prequalified welding procedures for structural steel as described in AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Prequalification of WPSs Clause or qualify by tests as prescribed in AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Qualification Clause. For welding procedures qualified by tests, the coupon welding and specimen testing

will be witnessed and the test report document signed by the Contracting Officer. Approval of any welding procedure does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for producing a finished structure meeting all requirements of these specifications. The Contractor will be directed or authorized to make any changes in previously approved welding procedures that are deemed necessary or desirable by the Contracting Officer.

a. Submit a complete schedule of welding procedures for each steel structure to be welded prior to commencing fabrication. Provide the schedule in conformance with the requirements specified in the provisions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M

b. Provide within the schedule detailed procedure specifications and tables or diagrams showing the procedures to be used for each required joint. Include in the welding procedures filler metal, preheat, interpass temperature and stress-relief heat treatment requirements. Clearly identify each welding procedure as being prequalified or required to be qualified by tests.

c. Show types and locations of welds designated or in the specifications to receive nondestructive testing in the welding procedures.

2.9.5.1.2 Welding Process

Perform welding of structural steel by an electric arc welding process using a method which excludes the atmosphere from the molten metal and conforms to the applicable provisions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Minimize residual stresses, distortion and shrinkage from welding.

2.9.5.1.3 Welding Technique

2.9.5.1.3.1 Filler Metal

Provide the electrode, electrode-flux combination and grade of filler metal conforming to the appropriate AWS specification for the base metal and welding process being used or be as shown where a specific choice of AWS specification allowables is required. Submit filler metal product data. Include the AWS designation of the electrodes to be used in the schedule of welding procedures. Use only low hydrogen electrodes for manual shielded metal-arc welding regardless of the thickness of the steel. Use a controlled temperature storage oven at the job site as prescribed by AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Fabrication Clause to maintain low moisture of low hydrogen electrodes.

2.9.5.1.3.2 Preheat and Interpass Temperature

Perform preheating as required by AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Fabrication Clause or as otherwise specified except that the temperature of the base metal must be at least 70 degrees F. Slowly and uniformly preheat the joint area by approved means to the prescribed temperature, held at that temperature until the welding is completed and then permitted to cool slowly in still air.

2.9.5.1.3.3 Stress-Relief Heat Treatment

Where stress relief heat treatment is specified or shown, perform in accordance with the requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Fabrication Clause unless otherwise authorized or directed.

2.9.5.1.4 Workmanship

Perform welding workmanship in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Fabrication Clause and other applicable requirements of these specifications.

2.9.5.1.4.1 Preparation of Base Metal

Prior to welding inspect surfaces to be welded to ensure compliance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Fabrication Clause.

2.9.5.1.4.2 Temporary Welds

Make temporary welds, required for fabrication and erection, under the controlled conditions prescribed for permanent work. Make temporary welds using low-hydrogen welding electrodes and by welders qualified for permanent work as specified in these specifications. Conduct preheating for temporary welds as required by AWS D1.1/D1.1M for permanent welds except that the minimum temperature must be 120 degrees F in any case. In making temporary welds, do not strike arcs in other than weld locations. Remove each temporary weld and grind flush with adjacent surfaces after serving its purpose.

2.9.5.1.4.3 Tack Welds

Tack welds that are to be incorporated into the permanent work are to exhibit the same quality requirements as the permanent welds; clean and thoroughly fuse them with permanent welds. Perform preheating as specified above for temporary welds. Provide cascaded ends on multiple-pass tack welds. Remove defective tack welds before permanent welding.

2.9.5.2 Welding of Steel Castings

Remove unsound material from the surfaces of steel castings, to be incorporated into welded connections, by chipping, machining, air-arc gouging or grinding. Do not weld major connections designed for transfer of stresses if the temperature of the casting is lower than 100 degrees F. Preheat castings containing over 0.35 percent carbon or over 0.75 percent manganese to a temperature not to exceed 450 degrees F and conduct welding while the castings are maintained at a temperature above 350 degrees F. Welding is not permitted on castings containing carbon in excess of 0.45 percent except on written authorization. Castings requiring welding repairs after the first annealing and castings involving welding fabrication must be stress-relieved annealed prior to receiving final machining unless otherwise permitted.

2.9.5.3 Welding of Steel Studs

Welding of steel studs must conform to the requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Stud Welding Clause, except as otherwise specified for the procedures for welding steel studs to structural steel, including mechanical, workmanship, technique, stud application qualification, production quality control and fabrication and verification inspection procedures.

2.9.5.3.1 Application Qualification for Steel Studs

As a condition of approval of the stud application process, submit certified test reports and certification that the studs conform to the

requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Stud Welding Clause, certified results of the stud manufacturer's stud base qualification test, and certified results of the stud application qualification test as required by AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Stud Welding Clause, prior to commencing fabrication, except as otherwise specified.

2.9.5.3.2 Production Control

Production control of stud welding must conform to the requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Stud Welding Clause, except as otherwise specified for quality control for production welding of studs. Weld studs on which pre-production testing is to be performed must be in the same general position as required on production studs (flat, vertical, overhead or sloping). If the reduction of the length of studs becomes less than normal as they are welded, stop welding immediately and do not resume until the cause has been corrected.

2.9.6 Bolted Connections

2.9.6.1 Bolted Structural Steel Connections

Provide bolts, nuts and washers of the type specified or indicated. Equip all nuts with washers except for high strength bolts. Use beveled washers where bearing faces have a slope of more than 1:20 with respect to a plane normal to the bolt axis. Where the use of high strength bolts is specified or indicated, conform the materials, workmanship and installation to the applicable provisions of ASTM F3125/F3125M. Install High Strength Bolts ASTM F3125/F3125M Grade A325 or Grade A490 in accordance with the requirements of RCSC A348. All High Strength Bolted Connections are fully pretensioned to the minimum pretension as specified in RCSC A348. Follow the pre-installation verification procedures outlined in RCSC A348. All other bolted connections are snug tight in accordance with RCSC A348.

a. Accurately locate bolt holes, smooth, perpendicular to the member and cylindrical.

b. Drill or subdrill holes for regular bolts and ream in the shop and not more than 1/16 inch larger than the diameter of the bolt.

c. Match-ream or drill holes for fitted bolts in the shop. Remove burrs resulting from reaming. Keep bolt threads entirely outside of the holes. The body diameter of bolts must have tolerances as recommended by ASME B4.1 for the class of fit specified. Place fitted bolts in reamed holes by selective assembly to provide an LN-2 fit.

d. Holes for high strength bolts must not have diameters more than 1/16 inch larger than bolt diameters. If the thickness of the material is not greater than the diameter of the bolts, the holes may be punched. If the thickness of the material is greater than the diameter of the bolts the holes may be drilled full size or subpunched or subdrilled at least 1/8 inch smaller than the diameter of the bolts and then reamed to full size. Poor matching of holes will be cause for rejection. Drifting occurring during assembly cannot distort the metal or enlarge the holes. Reaming to a larger diameter of the next standard size bolt will be allowed for slight mismatching.

2.9.7 Castings

Each casting and castings weighing more than 500 required pounds must bear cast or stamped heat numbers. Submit detail drawings for each casting. Deviations from the dimensions of castings shown must not exceed amounts that impair the strength of castings by more than 10 percent as computed from the dimensions shown. Dimensions of castings shown on approved detail drawings are finished dimensions. Castings that are warped or otherwise distorted or that are oversize to an extent that interfere with proper fit with other parts of the machinery or structure will be rejected. The structure of metal in castings must be homogeneous and free from excessive nonmetallic inclusions. Excessive segregation of impurities or alloys at critical points in castings will be cause for rejection. Do not make repairs to castings prior to approval. Minor surface imperfections not affecting the strength of casting may be welded in the "green" if approved. Surface imperfections will be considered minor when the depth of the cavity prepared for welding is the lesser of 20 percent of the actual wall thickness or 1 inch. Defects other than minor surface imperfections may be welded only when specifically authorized in accordance with the following requirements:

a. The defects have been entirely removed and are judged not to affect the strength, use or machineability of the castings when properly welded and stress relieved.

b. The proposed welding procedure, stress relief and method of examination of the repair work have been submitted and approved.

2.9.8 Machine Work

Tolerances, allowances and gauges for metal fits between plain, non-threaded, cylindrical parts conform to ASME B4.1 for the class of fit shown or required unless otherwise shown on approved detail drawings. Where fits are not shown they will be suitable as approved. Tolerances for machine-finished surfaces designated by non-decimal dimensions must be within 1/64 inch. Sufficient machining stock will be allowed on placing pads to ensure true surfaces of solid material. Provide finished contact or bearing surfaces true and exact to secure full contact. Polish journal surfaces and finish all surfaces with sufficient smoothness and accuracy to ensure proper operation when assembled. Accurately machine parts entering any machine and all like parts be interchangeable except that parts assembled together for drilling or reaming of holes or machining will not be required to be interchangeable with like parts. Accurately locate all drilled bolt holes.

2.9.8.1 Finished Surfaces

Provide surface finishes, indicated or specified, in accordance with ASME B46.1. Values of required roughness heights are arithmetical average deviations expressed in microinches. These values are maximum. Lesser degrees will be satisfactory unless otherwise indicated. Compliance with surface requirements is determined by sense of feel and visual inspection of the work compared to Roughness Comparison Specimens in accordance with the provisions of ASME B46.1. Values of roughness width and waviness height must be consistent with the general type of finish specified by roughness height. Where the finish is not indicated or specified use that which is most suitable for the particular surface, provide the class of fit required and be indicated on the detail drawings by a symbol which conforms to ASME B46.1 when machine finishing is provided. Flaws such as

scratches, ridges, holes, peaks, cracks or checks which make the part unsuitable for the intended use will be cause for rejection.

2.9.8.2 Unfinished Surfaces

Lay out all work to secure proper matching of adjoining unfinished surfaces unless otherwise directed. Where there is a large discrepancy between adjoining unfinished surfaces chip and grind smooth or machine to secure proper alignment. Unfinished surfaces must be true to the lines and dimensions shown and be chipped or ground free of all projections and rough spots. Fill in depressions or holes not affecting the strength or usefulness of the parts in an approved manner.

2.9.8.3 Pin Holes

Pin holes are to be bored true to gauges, smooth, straight and at right angles to the axis of the member. Do the boring after the member is securely fastened in position.

2.9.9 Miscellaneous Provisions

2.9.9.1 Metallic Coatings

a. Zinc Coatings - Apply zinc coatings in a manner and of a thickness and quality conforming to ASTM A123/A123M. Where zinc coatings are destroyed by cutting, welding or other causes regalvanize the affected areas. Regalvanize coatings 2 ounces or heavier with a suitable low-melting zinc base alloy similar to the recommendations of the American Hot-Dip Galvanizers Association to the thickness and quality specified for the original zinc coating. Repair coatings less than 2 ounces in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M.

2.9.10 Shop Assembly

Assemble each machinery and structural unit furnished in the shop to determine the correctness of the fabrication and matching of the component parts unless otherwise specified. Do not exceed those tolerances shown. Closely check each unit assembled to ensure that all necessary clearances have been provided and that binding does not occur in any moving part. Assembly in the shop must be in the same position as final installation in the field unless otherwise specified. Perform assembly and disassembly work in the presence of the Contracting Officer unless waived in writing. Immediately remedy errors or defects disclosed by the Contractor without cost to the Government. Before disassembly for shipment match-mark each piece of a machinery or structural unit to facilitate erection in the field. Indicate the location of match-marks by circling with a ring of white paint after the shop coat of paint has been applied or as otherwise directed.

2.9.11 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

Perform material tests and analyses certified by an approved laboratory to demonstrate that materials are in conformity with the specifications. These tests and analyses must be performed and certified at the Contractor's expense. Perform tests, inspections, and verifications conforming to the requirements of the particular sections of these specifications for the respective items of work unless otherwise specified or authorized. Conduct tests in the presence of the Contracting Officer if so required. Furnish specimens and samples for additional independent

tests and analyses upon request by the Contracting Officer. Properly label specimens and samples and prepare for shipment. Submit certified test reports for materials with all materials delivered to the site.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 ERECTION

a. Erection of structural steel, except as indicated in item b. below, must be in accordance with the applicable provisions of AISC 325, ANSI/AISC 303 and 29 CFR Part 1926, Subpart R.

b. For low-rise structural steel buildings (60 feet tall or less and a maximum of 2 stories), erect the structure in accordance with AISC DESIGN GUIDE 10.

After final positioning of steel members, provide full bearing under base plates and bearing plates using nonshrink grout. Place nonshrink grout in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

3.1.1 Storage

Store the material out of contact with the ground in such manner and location as to minimize deterioration.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

Except as modified in this section, design connections indicated in accordance with AISC 360. Build connections into existing work. Do not tighten anchor bolts set in concrete with impact torque wrenches. Holes must not be cut or enlarged by burning. Bolts, nuts, and washers must be clean of dirt and rust, and lubricated immediately prior to installation.

3.2.1 Common Grade Bolts

Tighten ASTM A307 bolts to a "snug tight" fit. "Snug tight" is the tightness that exists when plies in a joint are in firm contact. If firm contact of joint plies cannot be obtained with a few impacts of an impact wrench, or the full effort of a man using a spud wrench, contact the Contracting Officer for further instructions.

3.2.2 High-Strength Bolts

Provide direct tension indicator washers in all ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325 and Grade A490 bolted connections. Bolts must be installed in connection holes and initially brought to a snug tight fit. After the initial tightening procedure, fully tension bolts, progressing from the most rigid part of a connection to the free edges.

Fastener components shall be protected from dirt and moisture in closed containers at the site of the installation. Fastener components that are not incorporated into the work shall be returned to protected storage at the end of the work shift.

3.2.2.1 Installation of Direct Tension Indicator Washers (DTIW)

Where possible, install the DTIW under the bolt head and tighten the nut. If the DTIW is installed adjacent to the turned element, provide a flat washer between the DTIW and nut when the nut is turned for tightening, and between the DTIW and bolt head when the bolt head is turned for

tightening. In addition to the LIW, provide flat washers under both the bolt head and nut when ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A490 bolts are used.

3.2.3 Tension Control Bolts

Bolts must be installed in connection holes and initially brought to a snug tight fit. After the initial tightening procedure, fully tension bolts, progressing from the most rigid part of a connection to the free edges.

3.3 GAS CUTTING

Use of gas-cutting torch in the field for correcting fabrication errors is not permitted on any major member in the structural framing. Use of a gas cutting torch will be permitted on minor members not under stress only after approval has been obtained from the Contracting Officer.

3.4 WELDING

Welding must be in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M. Provide AWS D1.1/D1.1M qualified welders, welding operators, and tackers.

Develop and submit the Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS) for all welding, including welding done using prequalified procedures. Submit for approval all WPS, whether prequalified or qualified by testing.

3.5 GALVANIZING REPAIR

Repair damage to galvanized coatings using ASTM A780/A780M zinc rich paint for galvanizing damaged by handling, transporting, cutting, welding, or bolting. Do not heat surfaces to which repair paint has been applied.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Perform field tests, and provide labor, equipment, and incidentals required for testing. Notify the Contracting Officer in writing of defective welds, bolts, nuts, and washers within 7 working days of the date of the inspection.

3.6.1 Welds

3.6.1.1 Visual Inspection

Visual Examination of welds must be in accordance with Section 05 05 23.16 STRUCTURAL WELDING.

3.6.1.2 Nondestructive Testing

Nondestructive testing must be in accordance with Section 05 05 23.16 STRUCTURAL WELDING..

3.6.2 High-Strength Bolts

3.6.2.1 Testing Bolt, Nut, and Washer Assemblies

Test a minimum of 2 bolt, nut, and washer assemblies from each mill certificate batch in a tension measuring device at the job site prior to the beginning of bolting start-up. Demonstrate that the bolts and nuts, when used together, can develop tension not less than the provisions

specified in AISC 360, depending on bolt size and grade. The bolt tension must be developed by tightening the nut. A representative of the manufacturer or supplier must be present to ensure that the fasteners are properly used, and to demonstrate that the fastener assemblies supplied satisfy the specified requirements. Submit bolt testing reports.

3.6.2.2 Inspection

Inspection procedures must be in accordance with AISC 360. Confirm and report to the Contracting Officer that the materials meet the project specification and that they are properly stored. Confirm that the faying surfaces have been properly prepared before the connections are assembled. Observe the specified job site testing and calibration, and confirm that the procedure to be used provides the required tension. Monitor the work to ensure the testing procedures are routinely followed on joints that are specified to be fully tensioned.

Inspect calibration of torque wrenches for high-strength bolts.

3.6.2.3 Testing

The Government has the option to perform nondestructive tests on 10 percent of the installed bolts to verify compliance with pre-load bolt tension requirements. Provide the required access for the Government to perform the tests. The nondestructive testing will be done in-place using an ultrasonic measuring device or any other device capable of determining in-place pre-load bolt tension. The test locations must be selected by the Contracting Officer. If more than 10 percent of the bolts tested contain defects identified by testing, then all bolts used from the batch from which the tested bolts were taken, must be tested at the Contractor's expense. Retest new bolts after installation at the Contractor's expense.

3.7 METAL FABRICATIONS INSTALLATION

Thoroughly clean all parts to be installed. Remove packing compounds, rust, dirt, grit and other foreign matter. Clean holes and grooves for lubrication. Examine enclosed chambers or passages to make sure that they are free from damaging materials. Where units or items are shipped as assemblies they will be inspected prior to installation. Disassembly, cleaning and lubrication will not be required except where necessary to place the assembly in a clean and properly lubricated condition. Do not use pipe wrenches, cold chisels or other tools likely to cause damage to the surfaces of rods, nuts or other parts used for assembling and tightening parts. Tighten bolts and screws firmly and uniformly but take care not to overstress the threads. When a half nut is used for locking a full nut place the half nut first followed by the full nut. Lubricate threads of all bolts except high strength bolts, nuts and screws with an appropriate lubricant before assembly. Coat threads of corrosion-resisting steel bolts and nuts with an approved antigalling compound. Driving and drifting bolts or keys will not be permitted.

3.7.1 Alignment and Setting

Accurately align each machinery or structural unit by the use of steel shims or other approved methods so that no binding in any moving parts or distortion of any member occurs before it is fastened in place. The alignment of all parts with respect to each other must be true within the respective tolerances required. Set true machines to the elevations shown.

3.7.2 Blocking and Wedges

Remove all blocking and wedges used during installation for the support of parts to be grouted in foundations before final grouting unless otherwise directed. Blocking and wedges left in the foundations with approval must be of steel or iron.

3.7.3 Foundations and Grouting

Provide concrete subbases and frames and final grout under parts of machines in accordance with the procedures as specified in Section 03 30 53 MISCELLANEOUS CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION 05 51 33

METAL LADDERS

08/24

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 05 51 33

METAL LADDERS
08/24

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN LADDER INSTITUTE (ALI)

ALI A14.3	(2008; R 2018) Ladders - Fixed - Safety Requirements

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M	(2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A47/A47M	(1999; R 2022; E 2022) Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A53/A53M	(2024) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A123/A123M	(2024) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A153/A153M	(2023) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A500/A500M	(2023) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes
ASTM A653/A653M	(2023) Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM A780/A780M	(2020) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings

ASTM A924/A924M	(2022a) Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM D1187/D1187M	(1997; R 2018) Standard Specification for Asphalt-Base Emulsions for Use as Protective Coatings for Metal

MASTER PAINTERS INSTITUTE (MPI)

MPI 79	(2016) Primer, Alkyd, Anti-Corrosive for Metal

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.23	(Nov 2016) Ladders

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Ladders, Installation Drawings

SD-03 Product Data

Ladders

SD-07 Certificates

Fabricator Certification for Ladder Assembly

1.3 CERTIFICATES

Provide fabricator certification for ladder assembly stating that the ladder and associated components have been fabricated according to the requirements of 29 CFR 1910.23.

1.4 QUALIFICATION OF WELDERS

Qualify welders in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Use procedures, materials, and equipment of the type required for the work.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

Protect from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area free from contact with soil and weather. Remove and replace damaged items with new items.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING

See Section 01 33 29 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS AND REPORTING for sustainable design requirements for the following, except as modified herein.

2.1.1 Recycled Content of Products

Provide products with post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content to the greatest extent possible, but not less than 10 percent

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Structural Carbon Steel

ASTM A36/A36M.

2.2.2 Structural Tubing

ASTM A500/A500M.

2.2.3 Steel Pipe

ASTM A53/A53M, Type E or S, Grade B.

2.2.4 Fittings for Steel Pipe

Standard malleable iron fittings ASTM A47/A47M.

2.3 FABRICATION FINISHES

2.3.1 Galvanizing

Hot-dip galvanize items specified to be zinc-coated, after fabrication where practicable. Galvanizing: ASTM A123/A123M, ASTM A153/A153M, ASTM A653/A653M or ASTM A924/A924M, G90, as applicable.

2.3.2 Galvanize

Anchor bolts, washers, and parts or devices necessary for proper installation, unless indicated otherwise.

2.3.3 Repair of Zinc-Coated Surfaces

Repair damaged surfaces with galvanizing repair method and paint conforming to ASTM A780/A780M or by application of stick or thick paste material specifically designed for repair of galvanizing, as approved by Contracting Officer. Clean areas to be repaired and remove slag from welds. Heat surfaces to which stick or paste material is applied, with a torch to a temperature sufficient to melt the metallics in stick or paste; spread molten material uniformly over surfaces to be coated and wipe off excess material.

2.4 LADDERS

Fabricate vertical ladders conforming to 29 CFR 1910.23 and Section 5 of

ALI A14.3. Design assembly, including rung connections and methods of attachment, to support a live load of 300 pounds per rung, or 1000 pounds point load, or 100 pounds per square foot load applied downward. Use 2 1/2 by 3/8 inch steel flats for stringers and 3/4 inch diameter steel rods for rungs. Ladder rungs, step and cleats must be spaced not less than 10 inches and not more than 16 inches wide (measured before installation of ladder safety system), spaced no more than 14 inches apart, plug welded or shouldered and headed into stringers. Install ladders so that the maximum perpendicular distance from the centerline of the steps or rungs, or grab bars, or both, to the nearest permanent object in the back of the ladder or to the finished wall surface will not be less than 7 inches, except for the elevator pit ladders, which have a minimum perpendicular distance of 4.5 inches. Provide heavy clip angles riveted or bolted to the stringer and drilled for not less than two 1/2 inch diameter bolts or adhesive anchors as indicated. Provide intermediate clip angles not over 48 inches on centers. The top rung of the ladder must be level with the top of the access level, parapet or landing served by the ladder except for hatches or wells. Extend the side rails of through or side step ladders 42 inches above the access level. Provide ladder access protective swing gates at the top of access/egress level. The drawings must indicate ladder locations and details of critical dimensions and materials.

2.4.1 Ladder Security Gate

For ATFP Security Upgrade projects, provide existing ladders with either a ladder security guard door or ladder cage security guard gate. Ladder guard doors and gates are to be a minimum height of 6 feet 0 inches and constructed of 16 gauge galvanized steel. Provide a minimum of two hinges that are 4 inches by 4 inches by 1/8 inch zinc-coated plates steel with a 1/4 inch minimum diameter pin.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Install items at locations indicated, according to manufacturer's instructions. Verify all measurements and take all field measurements necessary before fabrication. Provide exposed fastenings of compatible materials, generally matching in color and finish, and harmonize with the material to which fastenings are applied. Include materials and parts necessary to complete each item, even though such work is not definitely shown or specified. Poor matching of holes for fasteners will be cause for rejection. Conceal fastenings where practicable. Thickness of metal and details of assembly and supports must provide strength and stiffness. Formed joints exposed to the weather to exclude water. Items listed below require additional procedures.

3.2 WORKMANSHIP

Metalwork must be well formed to shape and size, with sharp lines and angles and true curves. Drilling and punching must produce clean true lines and surfaces. Continuously weld along the entire area of contact. Do not tack weld exposed connections of work in place. Grind exposed welds smooth. Provide smooth finish on exposed surfaces of work in place, unless otherwise approved. Where tight fits are required, mill joints. Cope or miter corner joints, well formed, and in true alignment. Install in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and approved drawings, cuts, and details.

3.3 ANCHORAGE, FASTENINGS, AND CONNECTIONS

Provide anchorage where necessary for fastening metal items securely in place. Include for anchorage not otherwise specified or indicated slotted inserts, expansion anchors, and powder-actuated fasteners, when approved for concrete; toggle bolts and through bolts for masonry; machine bolts, carriage bolts and powder-actuated threaded studs for steel; through bolts, lag bolts, and screws for wood. Do not use wood plugs in any material. Provide non-ferrous attachments for non-ferrous metal. Make exposed fastenings of compatible materials, generally matching in color and finish, to which fastenings are applied. Conceal fastenings where practicable.

3.4 WELDING

Perform welding, welding inspection, and corrective welding, in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Use continuous welds on all exposed connections. Grind visible welds smooth in the finished installation.

3.5 FINISHES

3.5.1 Dissimilar Materials

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, protect surfaces with a coat conforming to MPI 79 to prevent galvanic or corrosive action. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete, plaster, mortar, masonry, wood, or absorptive materials subject to wetting, protect with ASTM D1187/D1187M, asphalt-base emulsion.

3.6 LADDERS

Secure to the adjacent construction with the clip angles attached to the stringer. Secure to adjacent structures or concrete with not less than two 1/2 inch diameter bolts or adhesive anchors. Install intermediate clip angles not over 48 inches on center. Install brackets as required for securing of ladders welded or bolted to structural steel or built into the concrete. Ends of ladders must not rest upon platform.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 05 - METALS

SECTION 05 52 00

METAL RAILINGS

08/23

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 05 52 00

METAL RAILINGS
08/23

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 325	(2017) Steel Construction Manual
AISC 326	(2009) Detailing for Steel Construction
AISC 360	(2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7-22	(2022; Supp 1 2023; Supp 2 2023) Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A2.4	(2012) Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing and Nondestructive Examination
AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel
AWS D10.12M/D10.12	(2000) Guideline for Welding Mild Steel Pipe

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M	(2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A53/A53M	(2024) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A123/A123M	(2024) Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A153/A153M	(2023) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A283/A283M	(2024) Standard Specification for Low and

	Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates
ASTM A307	(2021) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A500/A500M	(2023) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes

NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF ARCHITECTURAL METAL MANUFACTURERS (NAAMM)

NAAMM AMP 521	(2001; R 2012) Pipe Railing Systems Manual

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.2.1 Preinstallation Meetings

Within [30] [_____] days of contract award, submit fabrication drawings [to the Contracting Officer] for the following items:

[a. Iron and steel hardware

][b. Steel shapes, plates, bars and strips

][c. Steel railings and handrails

][d. Aluminum railings and handrails

] e. Anchorage and fastening systems

Submit manufacturer's catalog data, including two copies of manufacturers specifications, load tables, dimension diagrams, and anchor details for the following items:

[a. Structural-steel plates, shapes, and bars

][b. Structural-steel tubing

][c. Cold-finished steel bars

][d. Hot-rolled carbon steel bars

][e. Cold-drawn steel tubing

][f. Concrete inserts

][g. Masonry anchorage devices

][h. Protective coating

][i. Steel railings and handrails

][j. Aluminum railings and handrails

] k. Anchorage and fastening systems

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Fabrication Drawings; G

Iron and Steel Hardware; G

Steel Shapes, Plates, Bars and Strips; G

SD-03 Product Data

Concrete Inserts; G

Anchorage Devices; G

Protective Coating; G

Steel Railings and Handrails; G

Anchorage and Fastening Systems; G

SD-05 Design Data

Design Calculations For Steel Connections; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Welding Inspections; G

Mill Test Reports; G

SD-07 Certificates

Welder Qualification; G

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Installation Instructions

1.4 QUALITY CONTROL

1.4.1 Welding Procedures

Section 05 05 23.16 STRUCTURAL WELDING applies to work specified in this section.

Submit results of welding inspections testing in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M by an approved testing laboratory at the Contractor's expense. Provide laboratory welding inspection results to Contracting Officer.

1.4.2 Welder Qualification

Submit certified welder qualification by tests in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, or under an equivalent approved qualification test. In addition, perform tests on test pieces in positions and with clearances equivalent to those actually encountered. If a test weld fails to meet requirements, conduct an immediate retest of two test welds and ensure that each test weld passes. Failure in the immediate retest will require that the welder be retested after further practice or training and make a complete set of test welds.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Fabrication Drawing Requirements

Submit fabrication drawings for approval prior to fabrication. Prepare in accordance with AISC 325, AISC 326, ASCE 7-22, and State of Oregon Building Code. Fabrication drawings will not be reproductions of contract drawings. Sign and seal fabrication drawings by a registered professional engineer. Include complete information for the fabrication and erection of the structure's components, including the location, type, and size of bolts, welds, member sizes and lengths, connection details, blocks, copes, and cuts. Use AWS A2.4 standard welding symbols. Clearly highlight any deviations from the details shown on the contract drawings highlighted on the fabrication drawings. Explain the reasons for any deviations from the contract drawings.

1.5.2 Delegated Connection Design

Design structural steel connection indicated in the contract documents per AISC 360. Submit design calculations for steel connections signed and sealed by a registered professional engineer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FABRICATION

Preassemble items in the shop to the greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only to the extent necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

For the fabrication of work exposed to view, use only materials that are smooth and free of surface blemishes, including pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, and roughness. Remove blemishes by grinding, or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating, and applying surface finishes, including zinc coatings.

Provide railing and handrail detail plans and elevations at not less than 1 inch to 1 foot. Provide details of sections and connections at not less than 3 inches to 1 foot. Also detail setting drawings, diagrams, templates for installation of anchorages, including concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and miscellaneous metal items having integral anchors.

Use materials of size and thicknesses indicated or, if not indicated, of the size and thickness necessary to produce adequate strength and durability in the finished product for its intended use. Work the materials to the dimensions indicated on approved detail drawings, using proven details of fabrication and support. Use the type of materials indicated or specified for the various components of work.

Form exposed work true to line and level, with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges. Ensure that all exposed edges are eased to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch. Bend metal corners to the smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing the work.

Weld corners and seams continuously and in accordance with the recommendations of AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Grind exposed welds smooth and flush to match and blend with adjoining surfaces.

Form the exposed connections with hairline joints that are flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners wherever possible. Use exposed fasteners of the type indicated or, if not indicated, use countersunk Phillips flathead screws or bolts.

Provide anchorage of the type indicated and coordinated with the supporting structure. Fabricate anchoring devices and space as indicated and as required to provide adequate support for the intended use of the work.

Use hot-rolled steel bars for work fabricated from bar stock unless work is indicated or specified to be fabricated from cold-finished or cold-rolled stock.

2.1.1 Steel Handrails

Fabricate joint posts, rail, corners, and connections by one of the following methods:

a. Flush-type rail fittings of commercial standard, welded and ground smooth, with railing splice locks secured with 3/8 inch hexagonal-recessed-head setscrews.

b. Mitered and welded joints made by fitting post to top rail and intermediate rail to post, mitering corners, groove-welding joints, and grinding smooth. Butt railing splices and reinforce them by a tight-fitting interior sleeve not less than 6 inches long.

c. Railings may be bent at corners in lieu of jointing, provided that bends are made in suitable jigs and the pipe is not crushed.

2.1.2 Swing Gates

All openings in handrails shall be provided with safety swing gates as shown on the drawings and Section 05 51 33 METAL LADDERS. The swing gates must be self-closing, have the same load ratings as the handrails and include clasps capable of padlocking the gates shut to prevent unauthorized accidental access. The swing gate located at EL 185.0 shall include a placard that indicates 100 percent tie off id required past the access control of the swing gate.

2.1.3 Protective Coating

Provide hot-dipped galvanized steelwork as indicated in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M. Touch up abraded surfaces and cut ends of galvanized members with zinc-dust, zinc-oxide primer, or an approved galvanizing repair compound.

2.2 COMPONENTS

2.2.1 Structural Steel Plates, Shapes and Bars

Provide structural-size shapes and plates, except plates to be bent or cold-formed, conforming to ASTM A36/A36M, unless otherwise noted.

Provide steel plates, to be bent or cold-formed, conforming to ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C.

Provide steel bars and bar-size shapes conforming to ASTM A36/A36M, unless otherwise noted.

2.2.2 Structural-Steel Tubing

Provide structural-steel tubing, hot-formed, welded or seamless, conforming to ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B, unless otherwise noted.

2.2.3 Steel Pipe

Provide pipe conforming to ASTM A53/A53M, type as selected, Grade B; primed finish, unless galvanizing is required; standard weight (Schedule 40).

2.2.4 Anchorage Devices

Provide anchorage devices in accordance with Section 05 05 20 POST INSTALLED CONCRETE AND MASONRY ANCHORS.

2.2.5 Fasteners

Provide galvanized zinc-coated fasteners in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M used for exterior applications or where built into exterior walls or floor systems. Select fasteners for the type, grade, and class required for the installation of steel stair items.

Provide standard hexagon-head bolts, conforming to ASTM A307, Grade A.

2.2.6 Steel Railings And Handrails

Design handrails to resist a concentrated load of 200 lb in any direction at any point of the top of the rail or 50 lb per foot applied horizontally to the top of the rail, whichever is more severe. NAAMM AMP 521, provide the same size rail and post. Provide pipe collars of the same material and finish as the handrail and posts.

2.2.6.1 Steel Handrails

Provide steel handrails, steel pipe conforming to ASTM A53/A53M or structural tubing conforming to ASTM A500/A500M, Grade A or B of equivalent strength. Provide steel railings of 2 inch nominal size, hot-dip galvanized.

Provide kickplates between railing posts where indicated, and consisting of 1/8 inch steel flat bars not less than 6 inches high. Secure kickplates as indicated.

Galvanize exterior railings, including pipe, fittings, brackets, fasteners, and other ferrous metal components.

2.3 Mill Test Reports

Provide mill test reports for structural steel plates, shapes, bars, structural steel tubing. Mill test report will include but is not limited to material heat number, material grade, edition year and type of specification met, material dimension, mechanical properties, chemical analysis, heat treatment (if applicable), and certified inspector signature.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

Adjust railings and handrails before securing in place in order to ensure proper matching at butting joints and correct alignment throughout their length. Space posts not more than 8 feet on center. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:

a. Anchor posts in concrete by means of floor brackets anchored to the concrete with post-installed epoxy anchors.

b. Anchor posts to steel with oval steel flanges, angle type or floor type as required by conditions, welded to posts and bolted to the steel supporting members.

c. Anchor rail ends into concrete and masonry with round steel flanges welded to rail ends and anchored into the wall construction with post installed epoxy anchors.

d. Anchor rail ends to steel with oval or round steel flanges welded to tail ends and bolted to the structural-steel members.

e. Splice rails to existing rails by field welding per AWS D10.12M/D10.12 and touch up galvanizing.

Secure handrails to walls by means of wall brackets and wall return fitting at handrail ends. Provide brackets of malleable iron castings, with not less than 3 inch projection from the finished wall surface to the center of the pipe, drilled to receive one 3/8 inch bolt. Locate brackets not more than 60 inches on center. Provide wall return fittings of cast iron castings, flush type, with the same projection as that specified for wall brackets. Secure wall brackets and wall return fittings to building construction as follows:

a. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use post installed epoxy anchors.

Install toe boards and brackets where indicated. Make splices, where required, at expansion joints. Install removable sections as indicated.

3.2 INSTALLATION

Submit manufacturer's installation instructions for the following products to be used in the fabrication of steel hand rail work:

a. Structural-steel plates, shapes, and bars

b. Structural-steel tubing

c. Protective coating

d. Steel railings and handrails

e. Anchorage and fastening systems

Provide complete, detailed fabrication and installation drawings for all iron and steel hardware, and for all steel shapes, plates, bars, and strips used in accordance with the design specifications cited in this section.

3.2.1 Steel Handrail

Install handrail by means of base plates bolted structural-steel frame work or anchored to concrete. Secure rail ends by steel pipe flanges anchored by expansion shields and bolts.

3.2.2 Touchup Painting

Immediately after installation, clean field welds, bolted connections, abraded areas of the shop paint, and exposed areas painted with the paint used for shop painting. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry-film thickness of 2 mils.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.3.1 Field Welding

Ensure that procedures of manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds made, and methods used in correcting welding work comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 25 - INTEGRATED AUTOMATION

SECTION 25 05 11

CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS

08/24

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 25 05 11

CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS
08/24

PART 1 GENERAL

Many subparts in this Section contain text in curly braces ("{" and "}") indicating which cybersecurity control and control correlation identifier (CCI) the requirements of the subpart relate to. The text inside these curly braces is for Government reference only and enables coordination of the requirements of this Section with the RMF process throughout the design and construction process. Text in curly braces are not contractor requirements.

This Section refers to Security Requirements Guide (SRGs) and Security Technical Implementation Guide (STIGs). STIGs and SRGs are available online at the Information Assurance Support Environment (IASE) website at https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/downloads/ and an SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool is available at https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/. Not all control system components have applicable STIGs or SRGs. The "Control Systems SRG" does not apply to work performed under this Section; all requirements within this section to apply applicable SRGs DO NOT include the "Control Systems SRG".

1.1 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

This section does not contain sufficient requirements to procure a control system and must be used in conjunction with other Sections which specify control systems. This Section adds cybersecurity requirements to the control systems specified in other Sections, and as these requirements are conditioned on the control system being provided, there may be requirements in this Section that will not apply to this project. All Sections containing facility-related control systems or control system components are related to the requirements of this Section. Review all specification sections to determine related requirements.

In cases where a requirement is specified in both this Section and in another Section, the more stringent requirement must be met. In cases where a requirement in this Section conflicts with the requirements of another Section such that both requirements cannot be met at the same time, request direction from the Contracting Officer to determine which requirement applies to the project.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 135 (2020; Interpretation 1-8 2021; Errata 1-2 2021; Addenda CD 2021; Addenda BV-CE 2022; Interpretation 9-12 2022; Interpretation 13-24 2023; Addenda BV-CF 2023; Errata 3

	2023) BACnet—A Data Communication Protocol for Building Automation and Control Networks

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 802.1x	(2010) Local and Metropolitan Area Networks - Port Based Network Access Control

INTERNET ENGINEERING TASK FORCE (IETF)

IETF RFC 2819	(2000) Remote Network Monitoring (RMON) Management Information Base (MIB)

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST FIPS 140-2	(2001) Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules
NIST FIPS 201-2	(2013) Personal Identity Verification (PIV) of Federal Employees and Contractors

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DODI 8551.01	(2014) Ports, Protocols, and Services Management (PPSM)
DTM 08-060	(2008) Policy on Use of Department of Defense (DoD) Information Systems - Standard Consent Banner and User Agreement

1.3 DEFINITIONS

1.3.1 Administrator Account

An administrator account is an account with full permissions to a device, application, or operating system, including the ability to create and modify other user accounts.

Note that the operating system Administrator Account may be different than Administrator Accounts for applications hosted on that operating system. Also, most controllers will not have any support for accounts and will therefore not have an 'Administrator Account'.

1.3.2 Computer

A computer is one of the following:

a. a device running a non-embedded desktop or server version of Microsoft Windows

b. a device running a non-embedded version of MacOS

c. a device running a non-embedded version of Linux

d. a device running a version or derivative of the Android Operating System, where Android is considered separate from Linux

e. a device running a version of Apple iOS

Unless otherwise indicated or clear from context use of the word "device" in this Section includes computers.

1.3.3 Controller

A device other than a computer, IP Router, or Ethernet switch.

1.3.4 Mission Space

[A device or media is in mission space if physical access to the device or media is controlled by the organization served by the device. For example, a variable air volume (VAV) box controller in a suspended ceiling is in mission space if the VAV box serves that room; an electrical switchgear in an electrical room or an air handling unit (AHU) in a mechanical room or on a rooftop may still be considered to be in mission space if the organization (mission) served by that switchgear or AHU controls access to the electrical room, mechanical room or rooftop.]

1.3.5 Network

A network is a group of two or more devices that can communicate using a network protocol. Network protocols must provide a method for addressing devices on the network; a communication method that does not provide an addressing scheme is not a networked form of communication. Devices that communicate using a method of communication that does not support device addressing are not using a network. Addresses may be other than IP addresses, and addressing may be at either Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) layer 2 or layer 3.

1.3.6 Network Connected

A component is network connected (or "connected to a network") only when the device has a network transceiver which is directly connected to the network and implements the network protocol. A device lacking a network transceiver (and accompanying protocol implementation) can never be considered network connected. Note that (unlike many IT definitions of "Network Connected") a device connected to a non-IP network is still considered network connected (an IP connection or IP address is not required for a device to be network connected).

1.3.6.1 Wireless Network Connected

Any device that supports wireless network communication is network connected to a wireless network, regardless of whether the device is communicating using wireless. Unless physically disabled, devices with wireless transceivers support wireless, it is not sufficient to disable the wireless in software.

1.3.7 Network Media

The thing that provides the communication channel between the devices on a network. Typically wire, but might include wireless, fiber optic, or even power line (some network protocols allow sending network signals over power wiring).

1.3.8 User Account Support Levels

The support for user accounts is categorized in this Section as one of three levels:

1.3.8.1 MINIMALLY Supported

Device supports a small, fixed number of accounts (perhaps only one). Accounts cannot be modified. A device with only a "User" and an "Administrator" account would fit this category. Similarly, a device with two PINs for logon - one for restricted and one for unrestricted rights would fit here (in other words, the accounts do not have to be the traditional "username and password" structure). These devices typically only support role-based authentication.

Examples of devices which MINIMALLY support accounts are a) a variable frequency drive with a single account which requires a PIN for access to configuration; and b) a room lighting control touchpad interface that has a single account.

1.3.8.2 NOT Supported

Device does not support any Access Enforcement therefore the whole concept of "account" is meaningless.

1.3.9 Manual Local Input

Manual Local Inputs are system analog or binary inputs that are adjustable by a person but are, by intrinsic hardware design, very limited in potential capabilities. Manual Local Inputs do not have touch screens or full keyboards, but may have a few buttons or dials to allow input. Manual Local Inputs do not have full graphic screens or dot-matrix displays, but may have simple lights (LEDs) or 7-segment displays. Manual Local Inputs do not have any sort of menu structure, each button has a single well-defined function.

Examples of Manual Local Inputs are H-O-A switches, simple thermostats, and disconnect switches.

1.3.10 User Interface

A User Interface (UI) is something other than a Manual Local Input or Card Reader that allows a person to interact with the system or device. Note that while a Card Reader is not by itself a User Interface, a User Interface may contain a Card Reader in order for it to authenticate its user. Within control systems, there are a wide range of User Interfaces.

Two important distinctions are 1) whether the user interface is Local or Remote, and 2) the effective capabilities of the User Interface to alter data, which is the "privilege" of the user interface (where effective privilege available to a specific user at a specific user interface is the combination of the greatest privilege offered by the user interface and the specific account the user is logged into).

1.3.10.1 Local User Interface

A Local User Interface is a user interface where the physical hardware the user interacts with (keyboard, buttons, display, etc.) is physically part of the device being affected. All of the relevant characteristics of the

user interface are embodied within a single device.

Note that a Local UI may be able to access data in a different device, Local versus Remote in this context refers to the user interface itself; the capability to access data in a different device is covered under "Full User Interface".

1.3.10.2 Types of User Interface (by capability)

User interfaces are also categorized by their capabilities as being Read Only, Limited, or Full.

1.3.10.2.1 Read-Only User Interface

A Read Only User Interface (also referred to as a View-Only User Interface) is a user interface that only allows for reading data, it does not allow (have the capability to) modify data. A Read Only User Interface may be either Local or Remote. A User Interface that is configured to be Read Only (by some other means than the interface itself, such as using configuration software on a laptop) is a Read-Only Interface. Note a Read Only User Interface may have buttons (or touch screen, etc.) allowing the user to navigate through the presentation of data.

Examples of a Read Only User Interfaces are a) a publicly viewable "energy dashboard" showing weather data and energy usage within a building and b) digital wayfinding signage.

1.3.10.2.2 Limited User Interface

A Limited User Interface is a user interface that - by design - can only alter information local to the user interface. Note that the determination of "alter" includes only direct interactions, it explicitly excludes interactions that might occur as secondary effects. For example, an interface changing the flow setpoint in a pump controller is a direct interaction, the subsequent change in flow (as well as any subsequent downstream changes in valve position) are not direct interactions.

Two examples of LIMITED UIs are: a) a variable speed drive has a Limited Local User Interface which allows the user to change properties within the drive, but does not allow affecting things outside the drive; and b) a typical home WiFi Router has a Limited Remote User Interface which allows configuration of the Router, but does not allow direct interaction with other devices.

1.3.10.2.3 Full User Interface

A Full User Interface can alter information in devices outside the device with the user interface. For example, a typical Local Display Panel is a Full Local User Interface while a browser-based front end is a Full Remote User Interface.

1.3.10.2.4 View-Only User Interface

See Read-Only User Interface

1.3.10.3 Other User Interface Terminology

In addition to defining whether a user interface is a Hardware Limited,

Read-Only, Limited or Full, and whether it is Local or Remote, user interfaces are classified by whether they are writable or privileged.

1.3.10.3.1 Writable User Interface

Any User Interface that is not Read-Only is Writable. (Limited User Interfaces and Full User Interfaces are both writable user interfaces (as they are capable of changing a value)).

1.3.11 Wired Broadcast Network

Wired Broadcast Networks are any network, such as powerline carrier networks and modem (wired telephony), that use wire-based technologies where there is not a clearly defined boundary for signal propagation.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

1.4.1 Points of Contact

Coordinate with the following Points of Contact as indicated in this Section and as required. Not all projects will require coordination with all Points of Contact. When coordination is required and no Point of Contact is indicated, coordinate with the [Contracting Officer (KO)][_____].

a. Government Computer Access Point of Contact: [Contracting Office (KO)][_____]

b. HTTPS Certificate Point of Contact: [Contracting Officer (KO)][_____]

c. Email Address Point of Contact: [Contracting Officer (KO)][_____]

d. Password Point of Contact: [Contracting Officer (KO)][_____]

e. Mobile Code Point of Contact: [Contracting Officer (KO)][_____][

f. PKI Infrastructure Point of Contact: [Contracting Officer (KO)][_____]
]

1.4.2 Coordination

Coordinate the execution of this Section with the execution of all other Sections related to control systems as indicated in the paragraph RELATED REQUIREMENTS. Items that must be considered when coordinating project efforts include but are not limited to:

a. If requesting permission for wireless or wired broadcast communication, the Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request submittal must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.

b. If requesting permission for alternate account lock permissions, the Device Account Lock Exception Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.

c. If requesting permission for the use of a device with multiple physical connections to IP networks, the Multiple IP Connection Device Request must be approved prior to control system device selection and installation.

d. Wireless testing may be required as part of the control system testing. See requirements for the Wireless Communication Test Report submittal.

e. If the Device Audit Record Upload Software is to be installed on a computer not being provided as part of the control system, coordination is required to identify the computer on which to install the software.

f. The Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule must be coordinated with other work that will be interconnected to, and interconnections must be approved by the Government before relying on them for system functionality.

g. Cybersecurity testing support must be coordinated across control systems and with the Government cybersecurity testing schedule.

h. Passwords must be coordinated with the indicated contact for the project site.

i. If applicable, HTTPS web server certificates must be obtained from the indicated HTTPS Certificate Point of Contact.

j. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must be provided for each contractor using contractor owned computers.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request; G, [_____]

] Device Account Lock Exception Request; G, [_____]

Multiple Ethernet Connection Device Request; G, [_____]

Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements; G

Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule (Encrypted); G, [_____]

Protection of Information At Rest Proposal; G, [_____]

Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report; G, [_____]

Pre-Construction Control System Inventory Report (Encrypted); G, [_____]

Contractor Personnel Certifications; G, [_____]

USACE OT/Control Systems Acceptable Use Policy (AUP); G, [_____]

Account Level Permissions List (Encrypted); G, [_____]

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Network Communication, Ports, Protocols and Services Report; G[, [_____]]

Cybersecurity Network (Riser) Diagram (Encrypted); G, [_____]

System Data Flow Diagram (Encrypted); G, [_____]

SD-03 Product Data

Control System Cybersecurity Documentation; G, [_____]

Certificate Protection Status (Encrypted); G, [_____]

SD-06 Test Reports

[Wireless Communication Test Report; G, [_____]
]

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures; G, [_____]

Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report; G, [_____]

Antivirus/Antimalware Scan Results; G, [_____]

SD-07 Certificates

Software Licenses; G, [_____]

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

[Confidential Password Report; G, [_____]

][Password Change Summary Report; G, [_____]

] Enclosure Keys; G, [_____]

Software and Configuration Backups (Encrypted); G, [_____]

Auditing Front End Software; G, [_____]

Device Audit Record Upload Software; G, [_____]

System Maintenance Tool Software; G, [_____]

Control System Scanning Tools; G, [_____]

STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report (Encrypted); G, [_____]

Final Control System Inventory Report (Encrypted); G, [_____]

Integrity Verification Software; G, [_____]

Vulnerability Resolution Report; G, [_____]

BIOS/UEFI Protection Password/Passphrase List (Encrypted); G, [_____]

1.6 ENCRYPTED SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

Submittals with sensitive data are marked with "(encrypted)" and must be encrypted with NIST FIPS 140-2 compliant encryption methods with a password that meets the requirements under paragraph PASSWORDS. Encrypted submittals must be sent via DoD SAFE (https://safe.apps.mil/) and only sent to those who need to know. If DoD SAFE is not available, the government will provide an alternative secure file transfer that must be used. Do not store encrypted submittals on shared storage systems. Store and send encrypted information separately than the password.

1.7 QUALITY CONTROL

1.7.1 Certifications

Personnel performing cybersecurity functions must have current [IAT level 1][IAT level II][_____] certification according to approved DoD IA baseline certifications. Provide Contractor Personnel Certifications no later than [30][_____] days following Notice To Proceed. A cybersecurity function includes security-relevant functions that ordinary users are not authorized to perform. Examples of these activities include, but are not limited to, creating/modifying user accounts, configuring auditing levels, configuring functionality of a device that is restricted from general users, network architecture design, and applying secure configuration to an Operating System or device. See https://public.cyber.mil/cwmp/dod-approved-8570- baseline-certifications/.

Personnel who will have access to make changes to the OT system must read, agree to, and sign the USACE OT/Control Systems Acceptable Use Policy (AUP), provided by the government prior to accessing the OT system. Provide signed AUPs no later than [30][_____] days after notice to proceed.

1.8 CYBERSECURITY DOCUMENTATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-7; CCI-003071}

1.8.1 Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report

For each model of network connected or network infrastructure device, use the DISA SRG/STIG Applicability Guide and Collection Tool (available at https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/SCAP/to identify applicable STIGs or SRGs and provide a report indicating applicable STIGs and SRGs for each model. Provide the Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report concurrently with the Pre-Construction Control System Inventory Report.

[1.8.2 Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule (Encrypted)

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to CA-3(b), PL-8, SC-7(9), SC-7(11); CCI-000258, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075, CCI-002398, CCI-002399, CCI-002401, CCI-002402, CCI-002403. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to SC-7; CCI-001126, CCI-001109}

Provide a completed Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule documenting

network connections between the installed system and other systems. Provide the following information for each device directly communicating between systems: Device Identifier, Device Manufacturer, Device Description, Transport layer Protocol, Network Address, Port (if applicable), MAC (Layer 2) address (if applicable), Media, Application Protocol, Service (if applicable), Descriptive Purpose of communication. [For communication with other authorized systems also provide the Foreign Destination and POC for Destination.] For MODERATE Impact Systems: Also describe the impact of loss of the connection on the control system. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule as an editable Microsoft Excel file (a template Cybersecurity Interconnection Schedule in Excel format is available at https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1

]1.8.3 Network Communication, Ports, Protocols and Services Report

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CA-9, PL-8; CCI-002102, CCI-002103, CCI-002104, CCI-002105, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075 and also the submittal requirements associated with CM-6, CM-7, including CM-7(3), CCI-000388.}

Provide a Network Communication, Ports, Protocols and Services Report. For each networked device, document device identifier and the communication characteristics of the device including communication protocols, services used, encryption employed, and a general description of what information is communicated over the network. For each device using IP communication, document all TCP and UDP ports used. For each device using non-IP communication, document communication protocol and media used. If other control system Sections used on this project include submittals documenting this information, provide copies of those submittals to meet this requirement.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Network Communication, Ports, Protocols and Services Report as an editable Microsoft Excel file.

1.8.4 Control System Inventory Reports

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CM-8(a), SI-17, IA-3; CCI-000389, CCI-000392, CCI-000398, CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775, CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958}

Provide a Pre-Construction Control System Inventory Report (Encrypted) report and a Final Control System Inventory Report (Encrypted), using the [Inventory Spreadsheet][Hardware-Software List Template] listed under this Section at https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1 In the Control System Inventory Reports, document all [networked devices, including network infrastructure devices][devices, including networked devices, network infrastructure devices, non-networked devices, input devices (e.g. sensors) and output devices (e.g. actuators)], and all software. For each device provide all applicable information for which there is a field on the spreadsheet in accordance with the instructions on the spreadsheet.

In addition to the requirements of Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, provide the Control System Inventory Reports as editable Microsoft Excel files. Provide the Pre-Construction Control System Inventory Report concurrently with the Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report

1.8.5 System Data Flow Diagram (Encrypted)

Submit a system data flow diagram (encrypted) a minimum of 60 days prior to installed operation of the equipment. Provide diagrams electronically in PDF as well as either Microsoft Visio (VSDX) or Microstation (DGN), formatted for 11" x 17" sheets. Include:

a. All devices that communicate via routable protocols.

b. The normal system communications among the devices on the network, including the ports and protocols utilized for communications

c. Arrows to indicate direction of data flow between components. Define the physical media and protocol for each link.

d. Logical boundary of the system marked with a red line clearly defining components inside the boundary as well as components outside the boundary. Label connections to external networks and indicate the boundary protection.

e. Indicate VLAN segmentation of the devices on the diagram.

1.8.6 Software and Configuration Backups (Encrypted)

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-10; CCI-000550, CCI-000551, CCI-000552}

For each computer on which software is installed under this project, provide a recovery image of the final as-built computer on an encrypted external hard drive. This image must allow for bare-metal restore such that restoration of the image is sufficient to restore system operation to the imaged state without the need for re-installation of software. If additional user permissions are required to meet this requirement, coordinate the creation of the image with the identified Government Computer Access Point of Contact.

For all Ethernet switches provide a backup of the switch configuration. For all controllers, provide a backup of the controller configuration and the source code for all loaded application programs (all software that is not common to every controller of the same manufacturer and model).

Test backups to verify as functional for restoring the system prior to submittal. Include verification of testing and functionality with submittal. If any or all of these are provided under another Section, provide documentation indicating this and referencing those submittals.

1.8.7 Cybersecurity Network (Riser) Diagram (Encrypted)

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PL-2(a), PL-8; CCI-003051, CCI-003053, CCI-003072, CCI-003073, CCI-003075}

Provide a cybersecurity network (riser) diagram of the complete control system including all network and device hardware. For each device, include the device identifier, device type, and manufacturer. If the control system specifications require a riser diagram submittal, provide a copy of that submittal as the cybersecurity riser diagram. Otherwise, provide a riser diagram in [one-line format][one-line format overlayed on a facility schematic][tabular format][_____].

Provide diagrams electronically in Portable Document Format (PDF) as well as either Microsoft Visio (VSDX) or Microstation (DGN), formatted for 11" x 17" sheets.

1.8.8 STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report (Encrypted)

For every component (device or software) with an applicable STIG or SRG in the Proposed STIG and SRG Applicability Report, document compliance with the STIG or SRG requirements.

a. For components which are scannable by [the SCAP (security content automation protocol) tool (available online at https://public.cyber.mil/stigs/scap), include the SCAP][the Evaluate-STIG tool (available online at (CAC Required), include the Evaluate-STIG] report and raw scan results in addition to the final, manually reviewed and revised, documentation of compliance with STIG and SRG requirements. Checklist files should not contain any findings with a Not Reviewed (NR) status after manual reviews.

b. For components which do not support automated scanning, a manual review using the General Purpose STIG option should be done. A completed Checklist file should not contain any findings with a Not Reviewed (NR) status after manual reviews

For every component (device or software) with manufacturer provided cybersecurity documentation, procedure, or method for secure configuration or installation, provide a report documenting how the component was configured and any deviation from the manufacturer instructions.

1.8.8.1 STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report Deviations List

Within the STIG, SRG and Vendor Guide Compliance Result Report, include a Deviations List documenting all deviations required for system operation, and reasons why a STIG, patch, firmware update, or other requirement cannot be met. Include for each deviation:

a. STIG, SRG, Patch, Firmware Update, or other requirement being deviated

b. Vulnerability Identification

c. Rule Identification

d. Control

e. Control Correlation Identifier (CCI)

f. Finding

g. Justification

h. Current Risk-Mitigation Actions

1.8.9 Control System Cybersecurity Documentation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-5(a),SA-5(b),SA-5(c), SA-22(b); CCIs: CCI-003124, CCI-003125, CCI-003126, CCI-003127, CCI-003128, CCI-003129, CCI-003130, CCI-003131, CCI-003374}

Provide a Control System Cybersecurity Documentation submittal containing the indicated information for each device and software application.

1.8.9.1 Software Applications

For all software applications running on computers provide:

a. administrator documentation that describes secure configuration of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}

b. administrator documentation that describes secure installation of the software and software updates. {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003125}

c. administrator documentation that describes secure operation of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}

d. administrator documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003127}

e. administrator documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003128}

f. user documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the software and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003129}

g. user documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the software in a more secure manner {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003130}

h. user documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the software {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003131}

1.8.9.2 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Control System Cybersecurity Documentation requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section, provide:

a. Documentation that describes secure configuration of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}

b. Documentation that describes secure installation of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003125}

c. Documentation that describes secure operation of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003124}

d. Documentation that describes effective use and maintenance of security functions or mechanisms for the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003127}

e. Documentation that describes known vulnerabilities regarding configuration and use of administrative (i.e. privileged) functions for the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003128}

f. Documentation that describes user-accessible security functions or mechanisms in the device and how to effectively use those security functions or mechanisms {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003129}

g. Documentation that describes methods for user interaction which enables individuals to use the device in a more secure manner {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003130}

h. Documentation that describes user responsibilities in maintaining the security of the device {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003131}

i. Documentation of the published last date of support by the manufacturer or indication that a published date is not available. {For Government Reference Only: relates to CCI-003374}

1.9 SOFTWARE LICENSING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-2(a), SI-2(c), SI-7(14); CCI-001227, CCI-002605, CCI-002737}

For all software provided that has not already been licensed to the government or project site, provide a license to the [Government][project site][_____] for a period [of no less than 5 years][___], and the license must also include the following software updates:

a. Security and bug-fix patches issued by the software manufacturer.

b. Security patches to address any vulnerability identified in the National Vulnerability Database at http://nvd.nist.gov with a Common Vulnerability Scoring System (CVSS) severity rating of MEDIUM or higher.

Provide a single Software Licenses submittal with documentation of the software licenses for all software provided

1.10 CYBERSECURITY DURING CONSTRUCTION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-18, CA-3; CCI-000258}

In addition to the control system cybersecurity requirements indicated in this section, meet following requirement throughout the construction process.

1.10.1 Contractor Computer Equipment

Contractor owned computers may be used for construction. Contractor computers connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

1.10.1.1 Operating System

The operating system must be an operating system currently supported by the manufacturer of the operating system. The operating system must be current on security patches and operating system manufacturer required updates.

1.10.1.2 Anti-Malware Software

The computer must run anti-malware software from a reputable software manufacturer. Anti-malware software must be a version currently supported by the software manufacturer, must be current on all patches and updates, and must use the latest definitions file. Computers used on this project must perform a full antivirus scan at least once per day. Computers which have connected to any other network since the last full antivirus scan must perform a full antivirus scan prior to connection to the control system network or to the temporary contractor-installed IP network. Perform an antivirus scan on all removable media (e.g., external hard drives, CDs, DVDs, USB flash drives) prior to connecting to the control system environment.

1.10.1.3 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for computers, applications, and web-based applications supporting passwords must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum of eight characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.10.1.4 User-Based Authentication

Each user must have a unique account; sharing of a single account between multiple users is prohibited.

1.10.1.5 Firewall

Computers must have a firewall enabled and set to "public".

1.10.1.6 Encryption

Employ data-at-rest encryption to protect information stored on the device. The types of information that must be protected include site specific drawings, configuration files, project files, vulnerability data, and any other specific information that could potentially lead to a compromise. Immediately notify the Contracting Officer in the event that a Contractor-owned computer that stores this information is lost or stolen.

1.10.1.7 Demonstration of Compliance

The Government has the right to require demonstration of computer compliance with these requirements at any time during the project.

1.10.1.8 Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company using contractor owned computers. Contractor Computer Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1 Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company.

1.10.2 Temporary IP Networks

Temporary contractor-installed IP networks may be used during construction. When used, temporary contractor-installed IP networks connected to the control system, control system network, or a control system component at any point during construction must meet the following requirements:

1.10.2.1 Network Boundaries and Connections

The network must not extend outside the project site and must not connect to any IP network other than those specifically provided or furnished for this project. Any and all access to the network from outside the project site is prohibited.

1.10.3 Government Access to Network

Government personnel must be allowed to have complete and immediate access to the network at any time in order to verify compliance with this specification.

1.10.4 Temporary Wireless IP Networks

[In addition to the other requirements on temporary IP networks, temporary wireless IP (WiFi) networks, when permitted, must not interfere with existing wireless networks, must use WPA2 security and must not broadcast the network name (SSID). Network names (SSID) for wireless networks must be changed from their default values.]

Temporary wireless networks are NOT PERMITTED.

1.10.5 Passwords and Passphrases

The passwords and passphrases for all network devices and network access must be changed from their default values. Passwords must be a minimum 8 characters with a minimum of one uppercase letter, one lowercase letter, one number and one special character.

1.10.6 Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements

Provide a single submittal containing completed Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements for each company implementing a temporary IP network. Contractor Temporary Network Cybersecurity Compliance Statements must use the template published at https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1 Each Statement must be signed by a cybersecurity representative for the relevant company. If no temporary IP networks will be used, provide a single copy of the Statement indicating this.

1.11 CYBERSECURITY DURING WARRANTY PERIOD

All work performed on the control system after acceptance must be performed using Government Furnished Equipment or equipment specifically and individually approved by the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

All products used on this project must meet the indicated requirements, but not all products specified here will be required by every project.

2.1 ETHERNET SWITCH

Provide Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) Layer 2 Ethernet switches with the following capabilities, and with an interface to support switch configuration for these capabilities:

2.1.1 Required Functionality

Switches must:

a. Copper Ethernet ports must auto negotiate for 10, 100 and 1000 megabits-per-second links.

b. Be capable of implementing port level access control by MAC address and limit the number of MAC addresses to one MAC address per port.

c. For MODERATE Impact Systems, be capable of implementing per-port access control lists (ACLs) where the list can be filtered by source and destination IP addresses, and by source and destination UDP or TCP ports.[

c. For LOW Impact Systems, be capable of implementing per-port access control lists (ACLs) where the list can be filtered by source and destination IP addresses, and by source and destination UDP or TCP ports.][

d. Support Remote Network Monitoring (RMON) Port Analysis in accordance with IETF RFC 2819][

e. Configure target port and analysis port such that switch clones all target port traffic to analysis port.][

f. Support authentication via RADIUS server (for management and 802.1x)][

g. Support IEEE 802.1x network login.]

2.1.2 Configuration Requirements

Switches must:

a. Support configuration save and restore.

b. Support both manual IP address assignment and acquisition of a dynamic IP address via Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

c. Be capable of limiting access for configuration to one or more of: a web interface using HTTPS, a command line interface using SSH, or an SNMP connection using SNMP version 3 or later.[

d. Support the ability to lock configuration capability to a dedicated management port.]

2.2 DAISY CHAIN IP CONTROLLERS

Controllers used as Daisy Chain IP Controllers must be IP controllers with exactly two Ethernet network connections and basic built-in switch capabilities to allow implementation of an Ethernet network in a daisy chain architecture. Switches incorporated by Daisy Chain IP Controllers are not required to meet the requirements for Ethernet Switches as defined in this Section.

2.3 DATABASE AND WEB SERVER SOFTWARE FOR MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to RA-5(1), RA-5(5); CCI-001062, CCI-001067, CCI-001645, CCI-002906}

All computer-based databases must use [Microsoft SQL Server][or][Oracle][or][MySQL]. All computer-based web interfaces must use [Internet Information Services (IIS)][or][Apache] as the web server.

2.4 Lockable Enclosures with Padlock

Provide lockable enclosures with lockable handles, doors, or accessories allowing the cabinet to be secured using a padlock. Provide a stainless steel padlock with a minimum of a 3/8-inch diameter hardened shackle for each enclosure.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CYBERSECURITY HARDENING AND CONFIGURATION GUIDES

Install, configure, and harden all hardware and software furnished on this project in accordance with manufacturer provided documentation, procedures, or methods for secure configuration or installation. Configure hardware and software in accordance with the applicable STIGs and SRGs per the STIG and SRG applicability report. Install the most current versions of operating systems, software updates, firmware updates, security patches, service packs, and BIOS/UEFI, unless otherwise specified or approved. Do not implement specific hardening actions if that action would conflict with required functionality or another requirement of this Section.

3.2 NETWORK REQUIREMENTS

3.2.1 Information Flow Enforcement In MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-4; CCI-001368, CCI-001414, CCI-001548, CCI-001549, CCI-001550, CCI-001551}

Install and configure Ethernet switches to block all traffic on all ports not required by the control protocol.

3.2.2 Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication for Systems Other than Fire Protection Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates

to AC-18, AC-18(3); CCI-001438, CCI-001439, CCI-002323, CCI-001441, CCI-001449}

Unless explicitly authorized by the Government, do not use any wireless or wired broadcast communication. [If requesting authorization for wireless or wired broadcast communication, wired broadcast media such as powerline carrier is preferred to wireless.]

3.2.2.1 Wireless and Wired Broadcast IP Communications

[Unless specifically approved and installed in accordance with the project site requirements,]Do not install wireless or wired broadcast IP networks, including: do not install a wireless access point; do not install or configure an ad-hoc wireless network; do not install or configure a WiFi Direct communication.

When explicitly authorized by the Government, wireless IP communication may be used to communicate with an existing wireless network.

3.2.2.2 Non-IP Wireless Communication

For LOW Impact Systems: When non-IP wireless communication is explicitly authorized by the Government, use the maximum level of encryption supported by the specific protocol employed and select signal strength and radiated power to the minimum necessary for reliable communication.

For MODERATE Impact Systems: When non-IP wireless communication is explicitly authorized by the Government, the radios must meet NIST FIPS 140-2 Level 2.

3.2.2.3 Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request

Provide a report documenting the proposed use of wireless or wired broadcast communication prior to device selection using the Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request Schedule at https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1 If there is no proposed use of wireless or wired broadcast communication, provide a document indicating this instead of the Request Schedule.

For each device proposed to use wireless or wired broadcast communication show: the device identifier, a description of the device, the location of the device, the device identifiers of other devices communicating with the device, the protocol used for communication, encryption type and strength. For wireless communication, also show: RF Frequency, Radiated Power in dBm (decibel with a milliwatt reference), free-space range, and the expected as-installed range.

3.2.2.4 Wireless Communication Testing

As part of [Performance Verification Testing (PVT)][Functional Performance Testing {FPT}][_____], conduct testing of wireless communication for all devices indicated on the approved Wireless and Wired Broadcast Communication Request as requiring testing.

To test wireless communication, test for wireless network reception at multiple points along the wireless test boundary in the vicinity of the wireless device, and record whether a network connection can be established at each point. The wireless test boundary is [the building exterior walls][the facility fence line][_____]. If wireless testing is

required, provide a Wireless Communication Test Report documenting the testing points and results at each point for each wireless device.

]3.2.3 Non-IP Control Networks

When control system specifications require particular communication protocols, use only those communication protocols and only as specified. Do not implement any other communication protocol.

When control system specifications do not indicate requirements for communication protocols, use only those protocols required for operation of the system as specified.

3.2.4 IP Control Networks

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to CM-6(a), CM-7(a), CM-7(b), CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-001588, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-000381, CCI-000382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546. For Moderate Impact Systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to SC-5(1), SC-5(2); CCI-001094 CCI-001095}

IP Networks must be Ethernet networks and must use switches which are Ethernet Switches or Daisy Chain IP Controllers as defined in this Section. Do not use nonsecure functions, ports, protocols and services as defined in DODI 8551.01 unless those ports, protocols and services are specifically required by the control system specifications or otherwise specifically authorized by the Government. Do not use ports, protocols and services that are not specified in the control system specifications or required for operation of the control system.

For MODERATE Impact Systems, unless explicitly authorized, do not use IP networks if the same control functionality is available through the use of non-IP networks.

3.2.4.1 IP Network Routers

[For IP-based communications across control systems, use Routers to control and restrict traffic flow between network and virtual local area network (VLAN) traffic. Configure routers using Access Control Lists (ACLs) using a deny-all, permit by exception approach. When network traffic is within the local perimeter use Traditional Network Routers. When network traffic leaves the local perimeter, use Integrated Service Routers (ISR) or Firewalls with VPN capability instead.]

[Do not install any device that performs IP routing.]

3.2.4.2 IP Devices With Multiple Ethernet Connections

Except for Ethernet Switches and Daisy Chain IP Controllers, devices must not have more than one Ethernet connection to IP networks unless doing so is required by the project specifications and the specific application is approved. If a device with Multiple Ethernet Connections to IP networks is required, provide a Multiple Ethernet Connection Device Request using the Multiple Ethernet Connection Device Request Template at https://www.wbdg.org/ffc/dod/unified-facilities-guide-specifications-ufgs/ufgs-25-05-1 to request approval for each device. If a device with Multiple Ethernet Connections to IP networks is not required, instead provide a document stating that no approval is being requested.

3.2.5 Cryptographic Protection

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-2(9), IA-3(1), SC-8, SC-13, SC-23(1), SC-23(3); CCI-001942, CCI-001959, CCI-001967, CCI-002418, CCI-002449, CCI-002450, CCI-001185, CCI-001188, CCI-001664.}

All remote user interfaces must use HTTPS for all traffic between the user interface client and user interface server.[

For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to cryptographic protection (CCI-002450), comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs. Ensure that [all][IP][_____] network traffic is encrypted using NSA-approved cryptography; provision of digital signatures and hashing, and FIPS-validated cryptography.]

3.2.5.1 Additional Cryptographic Protection Requirements for USACE Civil Works Systems

Protect the following communications using NIST FIPS 140-2 compliant encryption methods:

a. Public switched telephone network

b. Leased lines

c. Any wireless communication

Establish Virtual Private Network IPSec tunnels between different facilities and between wireless devices. Provide firewalls to control communications between tunnels. Firewalls must meet STIG requirements. Network and wireless devices must be on the DISA approved product list (APL). See https://aplits.disa.mil/processAPList.

3.2.6 Device Identification and Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-3; CCI-000777, CCI-000778, CCI-001958. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to SC-23, SC-23(5); CCI-001184, CCI-002470.}

All computers must support [and implement]IEEE 802.1x for device authentication to the network.

3.2.6.1 For HVAC Control System Devices

Devices using HTTP as a control protocol must use HTTPS instead. [Devices using Ethernet must support IEEE 802.1x.][Devices using Fox Protocol must support IEEE 802.1x.][Devices using BACnet must support network security as specified for BACnet Secure Connect in ASHRAE 135.]

3.2.6.2 For Lighting Control System Devices

Devices using HTTP as a control protocol must use HTTPS instead. [Devices using Fox Protocol must support IEEE 802.1x.][Devices using Ethernet must support IEEE 802.1x.][Devices using BACnet must support network security as specified for BACnet Secure Connect in ASHRAE 135.]

3.2.6.3 [_____] Control System Devices

[_____]

3.2.6.4 Default Requirements for Control System Devices

For control system devices where Device Identification and Authentication requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section: [Devices using Ethernet must support IEEE 802.1x.]Devices using HTTP as a control protocol must use HTTPS instead.

3.2.7 Cryptographic Module Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-7; CCI-000803}

For devices (including but not limited to NIST FIPS 140-2 compliant radios) that have STIG/SRGs related to cryptographic module authentication (CCI-000803), comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

3.2.8 Secure Network Design

Provide network segmentation for networks leaving a local physical boundary, containing multiple types of systems (such as control and electronic security systems), or controlling more than one process that does not require direct communication of the control system components amongst discrete processes. Dual-homed hosts are prohibited. Protect external connections to the outside with a router, firewall, VPN, and IDS.

Network Interface Cards (NICs) or network transceivers are considered to be network connected regardless of network protocol used. Unused NICs must be disabled. A device is considered to be wireless network connected unless the wireless network controller is physically disabled. It is not sufficient to disable the wireless NIC in settings.

3.2.9 OT Monitoring System (OTMS)

Provide [1 rack unit][2 rack units][[_____]rack units] of rack space for data taps to be furnished, installed, and configured by the Government.

3.3 ACCESS CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

3.3.1 User Accounts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-2(a), AC-3, AC-6(1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9), CM-11(2), and IA-2; CCI-002110, CCI-000213, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-001812, and CCI-000764. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relate to AC-2 (2), AC-2(3), AC-2(4), AC-6(1), and CM-5(1); CCI-001361, CCI-000017, CCI-000217, CCI-000018, CCI-001403, CCI-001404, CCI-001405, CCI-002130, CCI-001683, CCI-001684, CCI-001685, CCI-001686, CCI-002132, CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-001813.}

Any user interface supporting user accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must limit access according to specified limitations for each account. Install and configure any device having a STIG or SRG in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

All user interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement user-based authentication where each account is uniquely assigned to a specific user. User interfaces FULLY supporting accounts must implement at least three (3) levels of user account privilege including: 1) an account with read-only permissions 2) an account with full permissions including account creation and modification and 3) an account with greater permissions than read-only but without account creation and modification. Disable any unnecessary or unused accounts. Disable any "guest-level" accounts that are created on the system by default.

3.3.1.1 Computers

All computer operating systems must FULLY support user accounts and implement accounts for access. Each control system software application not supporting accounts and running on a computer must be installed such that use of the software is restricted by the computer operating system to specific users.

Applications running on computers must not require the user be logged in to a computer operating system administrator account for normal operation. It is permissible to require the computer operating system administrator account for initial application installation and configuration.

3.3.1.1.1 User Account Levels

Configure OT using three account access levels: operator level, service level, and administration level. Configure normal operations to occur using an operator level account. Configure the operator level with minimum privileges required to operate the system that does not allow for configuration changes. Disable removable media devices and USB ports (with the exception of keyboard and mouse) for all levels except the administrator level. Submit an Account Level Permissions List (Encrypted) documenting the names all levels and which permissions are allowed for each level.

3.3.1.2 Controllers

For user interfaces provided by controllers, provide access control in accordance with the User Interface Requirements table for the applicable control system and user interface type.

a. For table entries of "NA": NA means Not Applicable, there are no interfaces in this category.

b. For table entries of "None Required": The user interface is not required to support user accounts.

c. For table entries of "MINIMALLY": The user interface must at least MINIMALLY support user accounts.

d. For table entries of "FULLY": The user interface must at FULLY support user accounts.

e. For table entries of "KEY": The user interface must have physical security in the form of either a key lock on the interface itself or be furnished inside a lockable enclosure. Where this is required for a read only interface, the lockable enclosure must prevent viewing of data on the interface; for other interfaces, this lockable enclosure

must prevent using the interface to alter data.

f. For table entries of "Physical Security": For Local FULL interfaces, the interface must be located inside mission space. For Local Limited (not FULL) interfaces, the user interface must either a) be located within mission space or b) be protected by physical security at least as good as the control devices (and equipment controlled by the control devices) affected by the interface. For purposes of this requirement, 'affected' includes controllers with data that can be directly altered by the interface, as well as mechanical and/or electrical equipment directly controlled by those controllers, but does not include other interactions.

g. Entries of the form "X and Y" must meet both the requirement indicated for X and the requirement indicated for Y. For example, an entry of "MINIMALLY and Physical Security" indicates the user interface must both MINIMALLY support accounts and have physical security.

h. Entries of the form "X or Y" must meet either the requirement indicated for X or the requirement indicated for Y.

3.3.1.2.1 HVAC Control Systems

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact HVAC Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement**
Local Read Only (see note 1)	None Required
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Privileged	[MINIMALLY][Physical Security]
Local Full	MINIMALLY
Remote Read Only	None Required
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	MINIMALLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged	

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact HVAC Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement** (See note 3)
Local Read Only (see note 1)	None Required
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[None Required][MINIMALLY]

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact HVAC Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement** (See note 3)
Local Limited, Privileged	[MINIMALLY and Physical Security][FULLY]
Local Full	MINIMALLY and Physical Security
Remote Read Only	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	FULLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged 3)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS")	

3.3.1.2.2 Lighting Control Systems

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact Lighting Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement**
Local Read Only (see note 1)	None Required
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Privileged	[MINIMALLY][Physical Security]
Local Full	MINIMALLY
Remote Read Only	None Required
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	MINIMALLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged	

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact Lighting Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement** (See note 3)
Local Read Only (see note 1)	None Required
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Privileged	[MINIMALLY and Physical Security][FULLY]
Local Full	MINIMALLY and Physical Security
Remote Read Only	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	FULLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged 3)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS")	

3.3.1.2.3 Electronic Security Systems (ESS)

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact Electronic Security Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement**
Local Read Only (see note 1)	[KEY][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Non-privileged	NA
Local Limited, Privileged	[MINIMALLY and KEY][FULLY]
Local Full	FULLY and Physical Security
Remote Read Only	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	NA
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged	

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact Electronic Security Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement** (See note 3)
Local Read Only (see note 1)	[KEY][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Non-privileged	NA
Local Limited, Privileged	FULLY
Local Full	FULLY and Physical Security
Remote Read Only	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	NA
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged 3)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS")	

3.3.1.2.4 Fire Protection Systems

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact Fire Protection Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement**
Local Read Only (see note 1)	None Required
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[None Required][KEY or MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Privileged	KEY and Physical Security
Local Full	KEY
Remote Read Only	None Required
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	MINIMALLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged	

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact Fire Protection Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement** (See note 2)
Local Read Only	None Required
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[None Required][KEY or MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Privileged	[KEY and Physical Security][FULLY]
Local Full	KEY
Remote Read Only	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	FULLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS")	

3.3.1.2.5 USACE Civil Works Control Systems

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact USACE Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement**
Local Read Only (see note 1)	KEY
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[(see note 3)][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Privileged	[(see note 3)][MINIMALLY][Physical Security]
Local Full	[(see note 3)][NA]
Remote Read Only	[(see note 3)][FULLY]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	NA
Remote Limited, Privileged	NA
Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact USACE Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement**
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged [3)Device or system should not be capable of providing the interface type, otherwise notify the COR]	

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact USACE Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement** (See note 3)
Local Read Only	KEY
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[(see note 4)][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Privileged	[(see note 4)][MINIMALLY and Physical Security]
Local Full	[(see note 4)][NA]
Remote Read Only	[(see note 4][FULLY]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	NA
Remote Limited, Privileged	NA
Remote Full	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged 3)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS") [4) Device or system should not be capable of providing the interface type, otherwise notify the COR]	

3.3.1.2.6 [_____] Control Systems

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact [_____] Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement**
Local Read Only (see note 1)	[_____]
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[_____]

User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact [_____] Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement**
Local Limited, Privileged	[_____]
Local Full	[_____]
Remote Read Only	[_____]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	[_____]
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	[_____]
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged	

User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact [_____] Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement** (See note 3)
Local Read Only	[_____]
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[_____]
Local Limited, Privileged	[_____]
Local Full	[_____]
Remote Read Only	[_____]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	[_____]
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	[_____]
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged 3)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS")	

3.3.1.2.7 Default Requirements for Other Control Systems

For control system devices where User Interface Requirements are not otherwise indicated in this Section, use the Default User Interface Requirements tables.

Default User Interface Requirements for LOW Impact Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement**
Local Read Only (see note 1)	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Privileged	[MINIMALLY][Physical Security]
Local Full	[MINIMALLY][FULLY]
Remote Read Only	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	MINIMALLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged	

Default User Interface Requirements for MODERATE Impact Control Systems	
User Interface Type	**Access Control Requirement** (See note 3)
Local Read Only (see note 1)	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Non-privileged	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Local Limited, Privileged	[MINIMALLY and Physical Security][FULLY]
Local Full	[MINIMALLY and Physical Security][FULLY]
Remote Read Only	[None Required][MINIMALLY]
Remote Limited, Non-Privileged	FULLY
Remote Limited, Privileged AND Remote Full (see note 2)	FULLY
Notes: 1)Local Read Only User Interfaces are always Non-Privileged 2)Remote Full User Interfaces are always Privileged 3)Devices outside mission space require physical security protections as indicated (in "PHYSICAL SECURITY IN MODERATE IMPACT SYSTEMS")	

3.3.1.3 Additional User Account Expiration Requirements In MODERATE Impact Systems:

In addition to other user account requirements, user account expiration

and auditing must be configured as indicated.

3.3.1.3.1 For Control System Applications Running on Computers

If temporary accounts are supported, expire temporary accounts 72 hours after creation. Expire all other accounts after 35 days of inactivity.

3.3.1.3.2 For Other Control System Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

If temporary accounts are supported, expire temporary accounts 72 hours after creation. Expire all other accounts after 365 days of inactivity.

3.3.2 Unsuccessful Logon Attempts

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relate to AC-7 (a), AC-7 (b); CCI-000043, CCI-000044, CCI-001423, CCI-002236, CCI-002237, CCI-002238}

Except for high availability user interfaces indicated as exempt, devices must meet the indicated requirements for handling unsuccessful logon attempts. If a device cannot meet these requirements, document device capabilities to protect from subsequent logon attempts and propose alternate protections in a Device Account Lock Exception Request submittal. Do not implement alternate protection measures in lieu of the indicated requirements without explicit permission from the Government. If no Device Account Lock Exceptions are requested, provide a document stating that no approval is being requested as the Device Account Lock Exception Request.

3.3.2.1 Devices MINIMALLY Supporting Accounts

For LOW Impact Systems: Devices which MINIMALLY (but not FULLY) support accounts [are not required to lock based on unsuccessful logon attempts][must lock the user account [after [five][_____] consecutive failed login attempts][_____] and must unlock the user account after [15][_____] minutes have elapsed without an unsuccessful login attempt or by a successful login to a separate administrator account].

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Devices which MINIMALLY (but not FULLY) support accounts must lock the user account[after [five][_____] consecutive failed login attempts][_____] and must unlock the user account after [60][_____] minutes have elapsed without an unsuccessful login attempt or by a successful login to a separate administrator account.

3.3.2.2 Devices FULLY Supporting Accounts

Devices which FULLY support accounts must meet the following requirements.

a. It must lock the user account when [three][_____] unsuccessful logon attempts occur within a [15 minute][_____] interval.

b. Once an account is locked, the account must stay locked until unlocked by an administrator. If the account being locked is the sole administrator account on the device, the account must stay locked for [1 hour][_____] and then automatically unlock.

c. Once the indicated number of unsuccessful logon attempts occurs, delay further logon prompts by 5 seconds.

3.3.2.3 High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements

[There are no high availability interfaces which are exempt from unsuccessful logon attempts requirements.][The following high availability interfaces are exempt from unsuccessful logon attempts requirements:

High Availability Interfaces Exempt from Unsuccessful Logon Attempts Requirements		
User Interface	**Location**	**Action to take in lieu of locking screen**
[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
[_____]	[_____]	[_____]

]

3.3.3 System Use Notification

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-8; CCI-000048, CCI-002247, CCI-002243, CCI-002244, CCI-002245, CCI-002246, CCI-000050, CCI-002248}

3.3.3.1 System Use Notification for Remote User Interfaces

Remote user interfaces must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 on screen.

3.3.3.2 System Use Notification for Local User Interfaces

Devices which are connected to a network and have a local user interface must display a warning banner meeting the requirements of DTM 08-060 on the user interface screen if capable of doing so and must have a permanently affixed label with an approved banner from DTM 08-060 if unable to display the warning banner on the screen. Where it is impractical (perhaps due to device size) to affix the label to the device, affix the label to the device enclosure.

Labels must be machine printed or engraved, plastic or metal, designed for permanent installation, must use a font no smaller than 14 point, and must provide a high contrast between font and background colors.

3.3.4 Session Lock and Session Termination Requirements In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-11(a), AC-11(b), AC-11(1), AC-12, SC-10; AC-10; CCI-000058, CCI-000059, CCI-000056, CCI-000057, CCI-000060, CCI-002360, CCI-002361, CCI-001133, CCI-001134, CCI-000054, CCI-000055, CCI-002252}

3.3.4.1 Session Termination

When session termination is required for a User Interface, the User Interface must implement session termination a) based on manual initiation, or b) based on lack of activity, or c) based on either manual initiation or lack of activity, as indicated.

Session Termination must result in logging out the user. A logged out User Interface may only perform actions as indicated in the "Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication" subpart of this Section or display a publicly viewable image or blank screen. User Interfaces must remain logged out (session terminated) until a user enters correct authentication information, which must initiate a new session. All User Interfaces running on computers and all Remote User Interfaces must also terminate network connections as part of session termination.

3.3.4.2 Session Lock

When session lock is required for a User Interface, the User Interface must implement session lock a) based on manual initiation, or b) based on lack of activity, or c) based on either manual initiation or lack of activity, as indicated.

Session lock must result in the User Interface being suspended and the user interface must display a publicly viewable image or blank screen. No interaction with the user interface must be possible until either a) the same user enters valid authentication information, in which case that session must be continued, or b) until a different user enters valid authentication information at which point the first session must be terminated and a new session initiated for the new user.

3.3.4.3 Session Lock and Termination for Computers

[Except as shown in the Session Lock and Session Termination Exception Table,]User Interface sessions provided by computer operating systems must support the requirement for both Session Lock and Session Termination. Session Lock and Session Termination must be capable of being initiated by the user and must also be initiated by lack of activity. Session Lock must occur after [15][_____] minutes of inactivity, and Session Termination must occur after [30][_____] minutes total of inactivity (including, not in addition to, the time for Session Lock). When a user initiates a new session, terminate existing sessions if necessary to limit the total number of concurrent sessions to [1][_____].

[Except as shown in the Session Lock and Session Termination Exception Table,]Other User Interface sessions running on computers (for local user interfaces) or hosted on a computer (for remote user interfaces) and supporting accounts must support user initiation of Session Termination[and session lock. Session lock may be initiated by user initiation or automatically after [15][_____] minutes of inactivity]. In addition, remote User Interface sessions must also initiate Session Termination after [30][_____] minutes of inactivity [unless otherwise indicated in the Session Lock and Termination Exceptions table].

3.3.4.4 Session Lock and Termination for Controllers

[Except as shown in the Session Lock and Session Termination Exception Table,]Writable Remote User Interfaces must support requirements for Session Termination, and must both be capable of being initiated by the user and initiated by lack of activity. Session Termination must initiate after [30][_____] minutes of inactivity.

[Except as shown in the Session Lock and Session Termination Exception Table,]Local User Interfaces supporting accounts must support manual initiation of Session Termination. Privileged Local User Interfaces must

also support timed initiation of Session Termination[, unless otherwise indicated in the Session Lock and Termination Exceptions table], with Session Termination initiated at [30][_____] minutes of inactivity.[They must also support session lock, where session lock may be initiated by user initiation or automatically after [15][_____] minutes of inactivity.]

[3.3.4.5 Session Lock and Termination Exceptions

Table: Session Lock and Termination Exceptions

Device	Location	Session Lock and Termination Requirements for Device (or "none" to indicate session lock or session termination is not required)
[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
[_____]	[_____]	[_____]

]3.3.5 Permitted Actions Without Identification or Authentication

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AC-14; CCI-000061, CCI-000232}

The control system must require identification and authentication before allowing any actions[except read-only actions] by a user acting from a user interface which MINIMALLY or FULLY supports accounts.

3.3.6 Physical Security in MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to PE-3(1), PE-4, PE-5, SC-7(a), SC-7(c), SC-8, SC-8(1); CCI-000928, CCI-002926, CCI-000936, CCI-002930, CCI-002931, CCI-000937, CCI-001097, CCI-001109, CCI-002418, CCI-002419, CCI-002421.}

3.3.6.1 Physical Security for Media

3.3.6.1.1 Physical Security for Media Inside Mission Space

Install all non-IP network media located inside of the mission space in conduit. Install all IP network media located inside of the mission space in intermediate metallic conduit.

3.3.6.1.2 Physical Security for Media Outside Mission Space

Install all network media (both IP and non-IP) located outside of the mission space in rigid metallic conduit.

3.3.6.1.3 Physical Security for Non-Network Media in Fire Protection Systems

For Fire Suppression Systems which can be inhibited or forced to activate by manipulation of non-network wiring, install all non-network media outside of mission space, including analog and binary instrumentation wiring and power wiring, in rigid metallic conduit.

3.3.6.2 Physical Security for Devices

Install all devices (computers and controllers) which are located outside of mission space in lockable enclosures. (Recall that per definition of mission space, a room controlled by the mission is mission space regardless of whether it is contiguous with other mission space.)

Install all controllers, and other OT devices, connected to an IP network in lockable enclosures (both inside and outside of mission space).

3.3.6.2.1 Physical Security for Devices in Fire Protection Systems

For Fire Suppression systems with a release panel, install all components of the suppression system either inside mission space, or within locked enclosures. Components of these systems include: release panel, any relay or interface panels, analog and binary inputs or outputs, control valves, manual valves.

3.3.6.3 Physical Security for User Interfaces

Physical security requirements for User Interfaces are specified in the preceding paragraphs of this Section.

[3.3.6.4 Additional Physical Security for Confidentiality of User Interfaces and Printers

For each user interface or printer indicated in the "User Interfaces and Printers Requiring Additional Security Controls" table, implement the additional confidentiality controls indicated.

User Interfaces and Printers Requiring Additional Security Controls		
User Interface or Printer	Location	Additional Confidentially Control to be Implemented
[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
[_____]	[_____]	[_____]
[_____]	[_____]	[_____]

]3.3.7 Enclosures

Prior to final acceptance of the system, lock all lockable enclosures. Submit an Enclosure Keys submittal with all copies of keys for all enclosures and a key inventory list documenting all keys. Label each key with the matching enclosure identifier.

3.4 USER IDENTIFICATION AND AUTHENTICATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to IA-2, IA-2(1),IA-2(12), IA-5 IA-5(b), IA-5(c), IA-5(e), IA-5(g), IA-5(1), IA-5(11); CCI-000764, CCI-000765, CCI-001953, CCI-001954, CCI-001544, CCI-001989, CCI-000182, CCI-001610, CCI-000192, CCI-000193, CCI-000194, CCI-000205, CCI-001619, CCI-001611, CCI-001612, CCI-001613,

CCI-001614, CCI-000195, CCI-001615, CCI-000196, CCI-000197, CCI-000199, CCI-000198, CCI-001616, CCI-001617, CCI-000200, CCI-001618, CCI-002041, CCI-002002, CCI-002003. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to AC-6 (1), AC-6(10), AC-6(2), AC-6(9)-IA-2(4), IA-5(13); CCI-001558, CCI-002221, CCI-002222, CCI-002223, CCI-002235, CCI-000039, CCI-001419, CCI-002234, CCI-000768, CCI-002007.}

This subpart indicates requirements for specific methods of identification and authentication for users and user accounts. Where these requirements conflict apply the following order of precedence: 1) If present, Device Specific Requirements take precedence over any other requirements; and then 2) multifactor authentication requirements take precedence over password requirements.

3.4.1 User Identification and Authentication for All System Types

Unless otherwise indicated, all user interfaces supporting accounts (either FULLY or MINIMALLY) must implement Identification and Authorization via passwords.

[For LOW Impact Systems: User interfaces provided by computer operating systems must implement multifactor authentication via PIV.]

For MODERATE Impact Systems:[User interfaces provided by computer operating systems must implement multifactor authentication via PIV.][User interfaces supporting accounts (FULLY or MINIMALLY) on computers must implement multifactor authentication via PIV.][Devices with writable remote user interfaces must implement multifactor authentication via PIV.][Devices with Privileged Remote User Interfaces must implement multifactor authentication via PIV.] Software running on computers and computer operating systems must manage cached authenticators in accordance with the relevant STIGs. All other devices and software must not use cached authenticators.

3.4.2 User Identification and Authentication for Specific System Types

System specific requirements are in addition to and supersede those indicated for all system types. When no additional requirements are indicated for a specific system type the requirements for all systems still apply to that system type.

3.4.2.1 HVAC Control Systems Devices

[No additional system specific requirements apply.][User Interfaces which FULLY support accounts and which run on a computer must use multifactor authentication via PIV.]

3.4.2.2 Lighting Control Systems Devices

[No additional system specific requirements apply][User Interfaces which FULLY support accounts and which run on a computer must use multifactor authentication via PIV.]

3.4.2.3 Electronic Security System Devices

User interfaces which FULLY support accounts and which run on a computer must use multifactor authentication via PIV.[Other user interfaces which FULLY support accounts must use multifactor authentication via PIV.][User interfaces which MINIMALLY support accounts must use either passwords

or multifactor authentication via PIV.]

3.4.2.4 [_____] Control System Devices

[_____]

3.4.3 User Identification and Authentication for Specific Devices

[There are no additional device specific user interface requirements][Additional user identification and authentication requirements are defined in the TABLE.

TABLE: Additional Device Specific User Identification and Authentication Requirements

User Interface Device or Description	Identification and Authorization Requirements
[_____]	[_____]
[_____]	[_____]
[_____]	[_____]
[_____]	[_____]

]
[3.4.3.1 [_____]

[_____]

]

3.4.4 Implementation of Identification and Authorization Requirements

Identification and Authorization must be met by one of the following methods:

a. Direct implementation in the user interface.

b. For user interfaces on a computer: inheriting the Identification and Authorization from the computer operating system, either by the operating system limiting access to specific applications by user, or by the application itself having permissions based on the user logged into the computer.

c. For remote interfaces: an implementation shared between the remote user interface server and the remote user interface client. For example, a requirement for PIV authentication may be met on a remote user interface by a PIV reader on a web browser client which sends the authentication information via HTTPS to the remote server.

3.4.5 Password-Based Authentication Requirements

3.4.5.1 Passwords for Software and Applications Running on Computers

All software and applications running on computers supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

a. Minimum password length of 12 characters

b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.

c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.

d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.

e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.

f. Password must have a minimum lifetime of 24 hours.

g. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.

h. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters (where location is significant, a character may be reused if it is in a different position).

i. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.4.5.2 Passwords for Controllers FULLY Supporting Accounts

All controllers FULLY supporting accounts and supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

a. Minimum password length of 12 characters

b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.

c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.

d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.

e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.

f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of sixty (60) days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.

g. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters.

h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.4.5.3 Passwords for Remote Interfaces

Passwords for connecting to a Remote User Interface supporting password-based authentication must enforce the following requirements:

a. Minimum password length of 12 characters

b. Password must contain at least one uppercase character.

c. Password must contain at least one lowercase character.

d. Password must contain at least one numeric character.

e. Password must contain at least one special character. The list of supported special characters must include at least 4 separate characters.

f. Password must have a maximum lifetime of 60 days. When passwords expire, prompt users to change passwords. Do not lock accounts due to expired passwords.

g. Password must differ from previous five passwords, where differ is defined as changing at least 50 percent of the characters (where location is significant, a character may be reused if it is in a different position).

h. Passwords must be cryptographically protected during storage and transmission.

3.4.5.4 Passwords for Devices Minimally Supporting Accounts

Devices MINIMALLY supporting accounts must support passwords with a minimum length of [four][_____] characters.

3.4.5.5 Password Configuration and Reporting

[For all devices with a password, change the password from the default password. Coordinate selection of passwords with the Password Point of Contact. Do not use the same password for more than one device unless specifically instructed to do so. Provide a Confidential Password Report documenting the password for each device and describing the procedure to change the password for each device.

Do not provide the Password Summary Report in electronic format. Provide [two][_____] hardcopies of the Password Summary Report, each copy in its own sealed envelope.

][For all devices with a password, coordinate the changing of passwords with the project site following testing of the system but prior to turnover to the Government. Coordinate with Password Point of Contact to determine appropriate project site personnel to complete password changes. Accompany identified personnel to each device with a password and instruct personnel on the process of changing password. Record the time, date and personnel present when each device's password is changed and submit a Password Change Summary Report documenting this information.

Provide the Password Summary Report electronically in both PDF and Microsoft Excel.
]

3.4.6 Authenticator Feedback

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to IA-6; CCI-000206}

Devices must never show authentication information, including passwords, on a display. Devices that momentarily display a character as it is

entered, and then obscure the character, are acceptable. For devices that have STIGs or SRGs related to obscuring of authenticator feedback (CCI-000206), comply with the requirements of those STIGS/SRGs.

[3.4.7 Implementation of PKI Infrastructure in Moderate Impact Systems (Except USACE Civil Works Systems)

Coordinate with the PKI Infrastructure Point of Contact to configure the system to implement PKI such that the system validates certifications by constructing and verifying a certification path to an accepted trust anchor including checking certificate status information; the system enforces authorized access to the corresponding private key; the system maps the authenticated identity to the account of the individual or group; and the system implements a local cache of revocation data to support path discovery and validation in case of inability to access revocation information via the network.

]3.4.8 Implementation of PKI Infrastructure in USACE Civil Works Systems

Coordinate with the PKI Infrastructure Point of Contact to configure the PKI system. Implement PKI digital certificates for communications where possible, such that the system validates certifications by constructing and verifying a certification path to an accepted trust anchor including checking certificate status information. Configure the system to enforce authorized access to the corresponding private key, to map the authenticated identity to the account of the individual or group, and to implement a local cache of revocation data to support path discovery and validation in case of inability to access revocation information via the network. [Self-signed certificates are acceptable.]Document communications devices that cannot be Certificate protected in a Certificate Protection Status (Encrypted) submittal for all communication devices prior to any equipment requiring certificates arriving at the site.

3.5 CYBERSECURITY AUDITING

[Where an auditing requirement exists for email notification, notify via email the application administrator and Information System Security Officer (ISSO) of the event. Coordinate with the Email Address Point of Contact for email addresses. If outgoing email is not available to the system, disable email notifications.]

USACE Civil Works systems do not permit email notification. Disable all email notification. Auditing requirements for email notification in this section do not apply to USACE Civil Works control systems

3.5.1 Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-2(a), AU-2(c), AU-2(d), AU-3, AU-10, AU-12, AU-14(b), AU-14(1), AU-14(2), AU-14(3), CM-5(1), SC-7 (9); CCI-000123, CCI-001571, CCI-000125, CCI-001485, CCI-000130, CCI-000131, CCI-000132, CCI-001230, CCI-000133, CCI-000134, CCI-001487, CCI-000166, CCI-001899, CCI-000169, CCI-001459, CCI-000171, CCI-000172, CCI-001910, CCI-001914, CCI-001919, CCI-001464, CCI-001462, CCI-001920, CCI-001814, CCI-002400. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to AU-3 (1); CCI-000135, CCI-001488}

For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit events, content of audit records or audit generation, comply with the requirements of those

STIG/SRGs.

If auditing requirements can be met using existing control system alarm or event capabilities, those existing capabilities may be used to meet these requirements.

3.5.1.1 Computers

For each computer, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure computers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event. Send logs to a syslog server that is only accessible via accounts on the system with privileged level access.

3.5.1.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each computer to audit the following events:

a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)

b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts

c. Successful logouts

d. Privileged activities or other system level access

e. Concurrent logons from different workstations

f. Successful and unsuccessful accesses to objects

g. Program initiations

h. Direct access to the information system

i. Account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations. For MODERATE Impact Systems, also provide email notification when these audit events occur.

j. Kernel module load, unload, and restart

k. Operator actions related to operation of the system

3.5.1.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each computer to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

a. What type of event occurred

b. When the event occurred

c. Where the event occurred

d. The source of the event

e. The outcome of the event

f. The identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event

g. For MODERATE Impact Systems: For all privileged commands, full-text recording of the executed command and the user executing the command

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Audit records must provide sufficient detail to reconstruct events to determine cause of compromise and magnitude of damage, malfunction, or security violation.

3.5.1.2 For HVAC Control System Controllers

3.5.1.2.1 HVAC Control System Controllers FULLY Supporting User Accounts

For each controller which FULLY supports accounts, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure controllers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event.

3.5.1.2.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each controller to audit the following events:

a. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts to the controller

b. Successful logouts

c. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations. For MODERATE Impact Systems, also provide email notification when these audit events occur.

d. All controller shutdown and startup

e. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: All user commands.

3.5.1.2.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each controller to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

a. what type of event occurred

b. when the event occurred

c. the identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event

d. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: Full text recording of the executed command and the user executing the command.

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Audit records must provide sufficient detail to reconstruct events to determine cause of compromise and magnitude of damage, malfunction, or security violation.

3.5.1.2.2 Other HVAC Control System Controllers

There are no requirements to perform auditing at HVAC field controllers that do not FULLY support accounts.

3.5.1.3 For Lighting Control System Controller

3.5.1.3.1 Lighting Control System Controllers FULLY Supporting User Accounts

For each controller which FULLY supports accounts, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure controllers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event.

3.5.1.3.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each controller to audit the following events:

a. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts to the controller

b. Successful logouts

c. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations. For MODERATE Impact Systems, also provide email notification when these audit events occur.

d. All controller shutdown and startup

e. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: All user commands.

3.5.1.3.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each controller to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

a. what type of event occurred

b. when the event occurred

c. the identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event

d. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: Full text recording of the executed command and the user executing the command.

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Audit records must provide sufficient detail to reconstruct events to determine cause of compromise and magnitude of damage, malfunction, or security violation

3.5.1.3.2 Other Lighting Control System Controllers

There are no requirements to perform auditing at Lighting field controllers that do not FULLY support accounts.

3.5.1.4 [_____] Control System Controllers

[_____]

3.5.1.5 Default Requirements for Control System Controllers

For control system controllers where Audit Events, Content of Audit Records, and Audit Generation are not otherwise indicated in this Section:

3.5.1.5.1 Controllers Which FULLY Support Accounts

For each controller which FULLY supports accounts, provide the capability to select audited events and the content of audit logs. Configure controllers to audit the indicated events, and to record the indicated information for each auditable event.

3.5.1.5.1.1 Audited Events

Configure each controller to audit the following events:

a. Successful and unsuccessful attempts to access, modify, or delete privileges, security objects, security levels, or categories of information (e.g. classification levels)

b. Successful and unsuccessful logon attempts

c. Successful logouts

d. Concurrent logons from different workstations

e. All account creations, modifications, disabling, and terminations. For MODERATE Impact Systems, also provide email notification when these audit events occur.

f. All kernel module load, unload, and restart

g. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: All user commands.

3.5.1.5.1.2 Audit Event Information To Record

Configure each controller to record, for each auditable event, the following information (where applicable to the event):

a. what type of event occurred

b. when the event occurred

c. where the event occurred

d. the source of the event

e. the outcome of the event

f. the identity of any individuals or subjects associated with the event

g. For privileged user interfaces in MODERATE Impact Systems: Full text recording of the executed command and the user executing the command.

For MODERATE Impact Systems: Audit records must provide sufficient detail to reconstruct events to determine cause of compromise and magnitude of damage, malfunction, or security violation

3.5.1.5.2 Controllers Which Do Not FULLY Support Accounts

For each controller which does not FULLY support accounts configure the controller to audit all controller shutdown and startup events and to record for each event the type of event and when the event occurred.

3.5.2 Audit Time Stamps

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-8; CCI-000159, CCI-001889, CCI-001890. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to AU-8 (1); CCI-001891, CCI-001892, CCI-002046.}

Any device (computer or controller) generating audit records must have an internal clock capable of providing time with a resolution of one second. Clocks must not drift more than 10 seconds per day. Configure the system so that each device (computer or controller) generating audit records maintains accurate time to within 1 second. Note that if the control system specifications include requirement for clocks, the most stringent requirement applies.

3.5.3 Auditing Front End Software

The project site currently has the following software to support control system auditing: [none][_____]. If there is no existing auditing front end software or the software is not compatible with the provided control systems, provide Auditing Front End Software with audit log import and upload, export, notification, and analysis functionality. The Auditing Front End Software may be provided as a component of the control system front end or as a separate software package, and a single package may serve multiple control systems provided under the same projects if they are sharing a cybersecurity authorization.

When the Auditing Front End Software is neither existing nor installed under the requirements of another Section, furnish the Auditing Front End Software media and license [for subsequent Government installation][and install the software on [_____]][the control system front end computer in [_____]]. Submit copies of Auditing Front End Software if this function is not part of the software provided with the control system to meet requirements of other Sections.

3.5.3.1 Import and Upload Requirements

Auditing Front End Software must be capable of importing audit logs from the Device Audit Record Upload Software and of uploading audit logs over the network from all control system devices supporting network upload of audit logs.

3.5.3.2 Export Requirements

Auditing Front End Software must be capable of exporting to a file format supported by Microsoft Excel.

3.5.3.3 Notification Of Audit Failure in Devices in MODERATE Impact Systems

The auditing front end software must be capable of receiving notifications of audit failure from control system devices and computers and be able to provide email notification based on receipt of the notification.

3.5.3.4 Audit Reduction and Report Generation In MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-6(4), AU-7(a), AU-7(b), AU-7(1), AU-12(1); CCI-000154, CCI-001875, CCI-001876, CCI-001877, CCI-001878, CCI-001879, CCI-001880, CCI-001881,

CCI-001882, CCI-000158, CCI-000173, CCI-000174, CCI-001577.}

Auditing Front End Software must provide audit reduction and reporting capabilities that supports on-demand review and analysis, on demand reporting, and after the fact investigations of security incidents. The software must be able to combine audit records from all components within the system and analyze them as a single audit record. The software must correct for discrepancies in timestamps of audit logs from different sources and be able to account for discrepancies up to [2][_____] seconds between sources. The software must not alter original audit record content or time ordering of audit records. The software must have the capability to filter audit records using user-defined fields within the audit records.

The audit reduction and reporting capabilities may incorporate third party application, such as Excel or Access.

3.5.4 Audit Storage Capacity and Audit Upload

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-4; CCI-001848, CCI-001849}

The creation of audit records must never interfere with normal device operation. Devices must cease collection of auditing information if required to maintain normal operation.

a. For devices that have STIG/SRGs related to audit storage capacity (CCI-001848 or CCI-001849) comply with the requirements of those STIG/SRGs.

b. For controllers capable of generating audit records, provide [60][_____] days worth of secure local storage, assuming [10][_____] auditable events per day.[

c. For computers, provide storage for at least [_____] audit records.]

3.5.4.1 Audit Log Storage Notification In MODERATE Impact Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-5(1); CCI-001855.}

Controllers storing audit logs must provide notification when audit logs reach 75 percent of capacity either directly through email or indirectly by sending a notification to a computer, and the computer sending an email. Computers storing audit logs must provide notification when audit logs reach 75 percent of capacity directly through email.

3.5.4.2 Device Audit Record Upload Software

For each device (computer or controller) required to audit events and for which audit logs cannot be uploaded over the network by the Auditing Front End Software, provide and license to the Government software implementing a secure mechanism of uploading audit records from the device and exporting them to the Auditing Front End Software. Where different devices use different software, provide software of each type required to upload audit logs from all devices.

[When Device Audit Record Upload Software is capable of uploading audit logs over the network, install Device Audit Record Upload Software on the

same computer as the Auditing Front End Software.] Submit copies of device audit record upload software if this function is not part of the software provided with the control system to meet requirements of other Sections. If there are no devices requiring this software, provide a document stating this in lieu of this submittal.

3.5.5 Response to Audit Processing Failures

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to AU-5; CCI-000139, CCI-000140, CCI-001490.}

In the case of a failure in the auditing system, computers associated with auditing must provide email notification[and must [_____]]. For MODERATE Impact systems, the computer must also notify the associated auditing front end software. In case of an audit failure, if possible, continue to collect audit records by [overwriting existing audit records][_____].

For MODERATE Impact Systems: In the case of an audit failure at a controller performing auditing, the device must notify the associated auditing front end software of the audit failure if able, and must continue to collect audit records by [overwriting existing audit records][_____] if able. The auditing front end software must provide notification as indicated, treating the notification of failure from the device as a failure in the auditing system.

3.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR LEAST FUNCTIONALITY

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts), along with the Network Communication, Ports, Protocols and Services Report submittal specified elsewhere in this section, relates to CM-6(a), CM-6(c), CM-7, CM-7(1)(b), SC-41; CCI-000363, CCI-000364, CCI-000365, CCI-001588, CCI-001755, CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-000382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762, CCI-002544, CCI-002545, CCI-002546. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to CM-7(2), CM-7(5)(a), CM-7(5)(b); CCI-000381, CCI-000380, CCI-000382, CCI-001761, CCI-001762}

For devices that have a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port and device I/O access for least functionality), install and configure the device in accordance with that STIG or SRGs.

3.6.1 Device Capabilities

For HVAC Control Systems: Do not provide devices with remote user interfaces or with full user interfaces where one was not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

For Lighting Control Systems: Do not provide devices with remote user interfaces or with full user interfaces where one was not required.

For Other Control Systems: For LOW Impact Systems: [Do not provide devices with remote user interfaces or with full user interfaces where one was not required.] [Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.]

For Other Control Systems: For MODERATE Impact Systems: Do not provide devices with remote user interfaces or full user interfaces where one was

not required. Do not use a networked sensor or actuator where a non-networked sensor or actuator would suffice.

For all MODERATE Impact Systems: Unless specifically required by the government, do not provide a capability to update device firmware over the network.

3.6.2 Software

For software that has a STIG or SRG related to Requirements for Least Functionality (such as configuration settings and port access for least functionality), install and configure the software in accordance with that STIG or SRG.

Do not install software that is not specifically required to meet a contract requirement. Remove any previously installed that is not specifically required to meet a contract requirement. Do not implement functionality within software
that is not specifically required to meet contract requirements.

3.7 SYSTEM AND COMMUNICATION PROTECTION

3.7.1 Collaborative Computing

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-15(a), SC-15(b); CCI-001150, CCI-001152.}

Without explicit approval from the project site, control systems must not use collaborative computing technologies.

3.7.2 Denial of Service Protection and Application Partitioning In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-5, SC-12, SC-7(a); CCI-001093, CCI-002385, CCI-002386, CCI-002430, CCI-001097. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart also relates to SC-2; CCI-001082.}

To the greatest extent practical, implement control logic without reliance on the network. Except when required to meet the requirements of the control system Section (where the requirement can only be met using computer hardware), do not implement control logic in computers. For MODERATE Impact systems, do not implement control logic in a device providing (i.e. acting as a server for) a Full Remote User Interface.

3.7.2.1 Network Reliance in MODERATE Impact HVAC Control Systems

Except for networked input and outputs on input-output buses specifically designed to provide high reliability or redundancy, sensors and actuators must not rely on the network to exchange data with the controller executing the sequence of operation which uses the sensor value or determines the actuator command.

Sensor values required by multiple devices may be shared over the network provided they are connected to a controller requiring the value for execution of the sequence and that controller shares the value on the network.

3.7.2.2 Network Reliance in MODERATE Impact Lighting Control Systems

Except for networked input and outputs on input-output buses specifically designed to provide high reliability or redundancy, sensors and actuators must not rely on the network to exchange data with the controller executing the sequence of operation which uses the sensor value or determines the actuator command.

Sensor values required by multiple devices may be shared over the network provided they are connected to a controller requiring the value for execution of the sequence and that controller shares the value on the network.

[3.7.2.3 Network Reliance in MODERATE Impact [_____] Control Systems

[_____]

]3.7.2.4 Default Requirements for MODERATE Impact Control Systems

Except for networked input and outputs on input-output buses specifically designed to provide high reliability or redundancy, sensors and actuators must not rely on the network to exchange data with the controller executing the sequence of operation which uses the sensor value or determines the actuator command.

Sensor values required by multiple devices may be shared over the network provided they are connected to a controller requiring the value for execution of the sequence and that controller shares the value on the network.

3.7.3 Mobile Code In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-18(a), SC-18(b), SC-18(c), SC-18(1), SC-18(3), SC-18(4); CCI-001160, CCI-001161, CCI-001162, CCI-001163, CCI-001164, CCI-001165, CCI-001166, CCI-001662, CCI-002457, CCI-002458, CCI-001169, CCI-001695, CCI-001170, CCI-002469}

Devices with STIGs/SRGs related to Mobile Code and to Security Control SC-18 must be installed in accordance with the relevant STIGs/SRGs. All remote user interfaces must meet the requirements of the "Web Browsers and Application SRG".

[Mobile code may only be downloaded from a specifically authorized mobile code repository. Coordinate with the Mobile Code Point of Contact for the location of a repository.]

3.7.4 Protection of Information at Rest In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-28, SC-28(1); CCI-001199, CCI-002472, CCI-002475, CCI-002476}

Computers must protect information at rest in accordance with applicable STIGs.

Any control system device storing personally identifiable information (PII), controlled unclassified information (CUI), or classified information must be protected by an Information At Rest encryption solution or by a physical security solution. Provide a Protection of

Information At Rest Proposal indicating each device storing PII, CUI, or classified information and the encryption or physical security solution proposed for that device for government approval. If no devices stores PII, CUI, or classified information, provide a document stating this as the Protection of Information At Rest Proposal submittal. Do proceed with device selection and installation until the Protection of Information At Rest Proposal is approved. Once approved, implement approved Information At Rest protections.

3.7.5 Process Isolation and Boundary Protection in Moderate Impact Fire Protection Systems

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SC-7(a), SC-7(c), SC-7(4)(a), SC-7(4)(c), SC-7(5), SC-7(7), SC-7(9)(a), SC-7(11), SC-7(13), SC-7(13), SC-7(18); CCI-001097, CCI-001098, CCI-001102, CCI-002396, CCI-001109, CCI-002397, CCI-002398, CCI-002399, CCI-002403, CCI-001120, CCI-001119, CCI-001126}

3.7.5.1 Radio Interfaces for Fire Protection Systems

When radios interfacing a local fire protection system to a supervisory system are not NIST FIPS 140-2 validated, use a relay panel interface between the local fire protection system and the radio. Install and configure the relay panel to prohibit initiating any action within the local fire protection system other than causing the system to play a pre-recorded message[or causing the system to play a live audio message]. [Install relays using the normally open contact such that they pass a signal when they close, and so that a relay that loses power or has a failed coil does not pass a signal][Install relays using the normally closed contact such that they pass a signal when they open, and so that a relay that loses power or has a failed coil passes the signal]

3.7.5.2 Fire Suppression System Network Isolation

For fire suppression systems including a release panel, any network used in these systems must be dedicated to these systems and must be isolated from any other network, including other components of the Fire Alarm and Fire Suppression systems. Use only dry contacts and relays to transfer signals from these systems to any other systems. [Install relays using the normally open contact such that they pass a signal when they close, and so that a relay that loses power or has a failed coil does not pass a signal][Install relays using the normally closed contact such that they pass a signal when they open, and so that a relay that loses power or has a failed coil passes the signal]

3.7.6 Application Separation

Configure operating systems, applications, and network accessible devices using application separation. Utilize the operating system on the primary partition of the hard drive. Install application databases on a different partition than the operating system. Install web servers on a different partition than the operating system. Do not install web servers and database servers on the same computer. Do not host web servers and database servers on the same Virtual Machine.

3.8 SAFE MODE AND FAIL SAFE OPERATION

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to CP-12, SI-10(3), SI-17; CCI-002855, CCI-002856, CCI-002857, CCI-002754,

CCI-002773, CCI-002774, CCI-002775}

For all control system components with an applicable STIG or SRG, configure the component in accordance with all applicable STIGs and SRGs.

3.9 SYSTEM MAINTENANCE TOOL SOFTWARE

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to MA-3; CCI-000865.}

Submit and license to the Government all software required to operate, maintain and modify the control system such the Government or their agents are able to perform repair, replacement, upgrades, and expansions of the system, including programming of devices, without subsequent or future dependence on the Contractor, Vendor or Manufacturer. Submit hard copies of user manuals for each software with the software submittal. Provide any hardware keys or dongles, software keys, license numbers, and other information required to enable the Government to access or change the system.

For software provided and licensed to the Government under the requirements of another Section, submit a statement indicating the Section and Submittal under which the software was provided. For software provided to meet the requirements of this Section and not provided and licensed under another Section, submit software and software user manuals on DVD or CD as a Technical Data Package and submit [one hard copy][[_____] hard copies] of the software user manual for each piece of software.

3.10 DEVICE POWER

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to PE-11, PE-11(1); CCI-002955, CCI-000961. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to PE-9, PE-9(1); CCI-000952, CCI-002953, CCI-002954.}

[For LOW Impact Systems: [Provide emergency power in accordance with the control system and equipment specification Sections, [_____]]

] For MODERATE Impact Systems: Provide control system with power supply meeting or exceeding the reliability of the controlled equipment. Powering control system devices using the same power source as the equipment controlled by the device is a permissible method of meeting this requirement. Without explicit approval from the government, do not install local uninterruptible power supplies (UPSes) as a source of device power.

3.10.1 Device Behavior on Loss of Power In MODERATE Impact Systems:

Application programs and configuration settings must be stored in devices in manner such that a loss of power does not result in a loss of the application program or configuration settings: Loss of power must never result in the loss of application programs, regardless of the length of time power is lost; and loss of power for less than 2,500 hours must not result in the loss of configured settings.

In the event of a loss of power, when power is restored, controllers and computers executing control logic (and the underlying equipment) must recover and resume their normal sequences of operation. Note that the

sequence of operation may require specific actions (e.g. startup sequences) upon recovery from loss of power.

3.11 VULNERABILITY SCANNING

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to RA-5 RA-5(a),RA-5(b),RA-5(c),RA-5(d); CCI-001054, CCI-001055, CCI-000156, CCI-001641, CCI-001643, CCI-001057, CCI-001058, CCI-001059. For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) also relates to RA-5(1), RA-5(5); CCI-001062, CCI-001067, CCI-001645, CCI-002906.}

All IP devices must be scannable, such that the device can be scanned by industry standard IP network scanning utilities without harm to the device, application, or functionality.

3.11.1 Computers and Software Running on Computers

Computers and applications running on computers must meet relevant vulnerability scanning STIGs/SRGs and respond to approved DoD vulnerability scanning tools.

3.11.2 Controllers

Provide controllers that are scannable by standard control system discovery tools or control system browsers and return meaningful status information including the network inputs and outputs for the controller. This information must contain sufficient detail to detect vulnerabilities or exploits of the controller.

Provide all software needed to scan the control system as the Control System Scanning Tools submittal. If the software required to scan the system is already installed at the project site or is provided under a separate section instead provide a statement indicating this.

3.12 VULNERABILITY ALERTS

Prior to installation, adhere to all vendor-specific and CISA Information Assurance Vulnerability Alert (IAVA, see https://www.cisa.gov/uscert/ncas/alerts) requirements for reporting, patching, and/or mitigating. For alerts which occur after installation but before government acceptance:

a. Notify the Contracting Officer within 48 hours of receipt of the alert and within 48 hours of resolution of vulnerabilities.

b. Resolve the vulnerabilities within 30 days of the alert.

c. Submit a Vulnerability Resolution Report within 14 days of resolving the vulnerabilities in the alert. The report must identify the vulnerability alert ID and the date of resolution for each component.

3.13 FIPS 201-2 REQUIREMENT

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-4 (10); CCI-003116}

Devices in the following systems which implement PIV must be on the NIST FIPS 201-2 approved product list (https://www.idmanagement.gov/

approved-products-list/): [NONE][electronic security systems(ESS)][_____].

3.14 BIOS/UEFI PROTECTION

Provide a protection mechanism to prevent unwanted changes to the system BIOS/UEFI for all devices on the system, where technically feasible. BIOS/UEFI Protection Mechanisms must utilize passwords or passphrases that conform to DoD STIG requirements. BIOS/UEFI Protection passwords must be used to allow access by system engineering and administrative personnel after initial commissioning of the system. Enable UEFI Secure Boot if hardware and Operating System support the option. Provide a BIOS/UEFI Protection Password/Passphrase List (Encrypted) documenting all passwords and passphrases.

3.15 SYSTEM AND INTEGRATION INTEGRITY

3.15.1 Malicious Code Protection

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart (and its subparts) relates to SI-3(c); CCI-001241, CCI-002623}

For all computers installed under this project, provide malware protection software media, provide licenses, and install and configure malware protection software as indicated. Provide the most up-to-date DoD approved software with up-to-date signatures. Verify that the software does not negatively affect the operation of the OT system. Computers being installed must be configured with up-to-date signatures, not older than 10 days, prior to deployment. Submit Antivirus/Antimalware Scan Results to show evidence of a clean scan. Coordinate with the Government Computer Access Point of Contact as required.

a. [Provide malware protection software licenses.][Malware protection software licenses will be Government furnished.]

b. [Provide malware protection software media.][Malware protection software media will be Government furnished.]

c. [Install and configure malware protection software in accordance with the relevant STIGs.][Malware protection software will be Government installed.]

3.15.2 Software, Firmware, and Information Integrity In MODERATE Impact Systems:

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to CM-5(3); CCI-001749, CCI-002704, CCI-002726}

If there exists Integrity Verification Software that can check boot process, software, firmware, or information in the control system and verify its integrity, provide it. If no such software exists, provide a statement to this affect in lieu of the software.

[The system prevents the installation of software and firmware without verification of the digital signature using an approved certificate.]

[3.15.3 Information System Monitoring

{For Government Reference Only: This subpart relates to SI-4 (a),(b); CCI-001253, CCI-002645}

[_____]

]3.16 CONTROL SYSTEM CYBERSECURITY TESTING

{For Government Reference Only: For MODERATE Impact systems, this subpart (and its subparts) relates to SA-11(a), SA-11(b), SA-11(c), SA-11(d), SA-11(e); CCI-003171, CCI-003172, CCI-003173, CCI-003174, CCI-003175, CCI-003176, CCI-003177, CCI-003178.}

3.16.1 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures

Prepare and submit Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures explaining step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the control system meets the requirements of this Section. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures may be submitted as a Technical Data Package.

3.16.2 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Execution

Using the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures verify that the control system meets the requirements of this Section. UNLESS GOVERNMENT WITNESSING OF A TEST IS SPECIFICALLY WAIVED BY THE GOVERNMENT, PERFORM ALL TESTS WITH A GOVERNMENT WITNESS. If testing reveals deficiencies in the system, correct the deficiency and retest until successful.

3.16.3 Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report

Prepare and submit a Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report documenting all tests performed and their results. Include all tests in the Control System Cybersecurity Testing Procedures and any additional tests performed during testing. Document test failures and repairs conducted with the test results. The Control System Cybersecurity Testing Report may be submitted as a Technical Data Package

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL, CYBERSECURITY VALIDATION SUPPORT

In addition to testing and testing support required by other Sections, provide a minimum of [_____] hours of technical support for cybersecurity testing of control systems to support the DoD Risk Management Framework process Cybersecurity assessment of the control system. This support is independent of (and in addition to) the Control System Cybersecurity Testing specified in this section.

3.18 CYBERSECURITY TRAINING

Provide [eight][_____] hours of classroom[and hands-on] training for [six][_____] Government personnel on the cybersecurity operation and maintenance of the control system provided. This training is in addition to and must be coordinated with control system training specified in other Sections.

The Government will provide the training location. Training must cover, at a minimum: (a) applying software and firmware updates, (b) user account creation, modification and deletion, (c) audit log upload procedures and (d) identification of privileged user interfaces and system impact of those interfaces. Training session must include a question and answer period during which government staff questions about cybersecurity aspects of the control system are answered.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SECTION 26 05 19.00 10

INSULATED WIRE AND CABLE

11/22

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 26 05 19.00 10

INSULATED WIRE AND CABLE
11/22

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659	(2014; R 2022) Standard for Nonshielded Cables Rated 2001-5000 Volts for use in the Distribution of Electric Energy
NEMA WC 26	(2008) Binational Wire and Cable Packaging Standard
NEMA WC 57	(2014) Standard for Control, Thermocouple Extension, and Instrumentation Cables
NEMA WC 70	(2021) Power Cable Rated 2000 Volts or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy
NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639	(2022) 5-46 kV Shielded Power Cable for Use in the Transmission and Distribution of Electric Energy

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2023) National Electrical Code

UL SOLUTIONS (UL)

UL 44	(2018; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for Safety Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Cable Installation Plan; G

SD-03 Product Data

Wire and Cable; G

Conductors; G

Cable Manufacturing Data

SD-06 Test Reports

Test Report(s), Inspection Report(s), and Verification Report(s); G

Cable Installation Report; G

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Furnish cables on reels or coils. Each cable and the outside of each reel or coil, must be plainly marked or tagged to indicate the cable length, voltage rating, conductor size, and manufacturer's lot number and reel number. Each coil or reel of cable must contain only one continuous cable without splices. Cables for exclusively dc applications, as specified in paragraph "High-Voltage Test Source," must be identified as such. Shielded cables rated 2,001 volts and above must be reeled and marked in accordance with NEMA WC 26, as applicable. Reels must remain the property of the Government.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 Wire Table

Furnish wire and cable in accordance with the requirements of the Cable Schedule, conforming to the detailed requirements specified herein.

2.1.2 Rated Circuit Voltages

All power wire and cable must have minimum rated circuit voltages in accordance with NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639 as applicable. Power wire and cable for circuit voltages rated 0-600 volts must be rated not less than 600 volts. Control wire and cable must have minimum rated circuit voltages in accordance with NEMA WC 57, but must be rated 600 volts if routed in raceway with other conductors that are rated 600 volts.

2.1.3 Conductors

2.1.3.1 Material for Conductors

Conductors must conform to all the applicable requirements of NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639 as applicable. Copper conductors must be annealed copper material and they may be bare, or tin- or lead-alloy-coated, if required by the type of insulation used. All conductors shall be copper. Aluminum and copper clad aluminum conductors are not acceptable.

2.1.3.2 Size

Minimum wire size must be as listed below.

a. No. 12 AWG for power and lighting circuits

b. No. 10 AWG for current transformer secondary circuits

c. No. 14 AWG for potential transformer, relaying, and control circuits

d. No. 16 AWG for annunciator circuits

e. No. 18 AWG for alarm circuits

Minimum wire sizes for rated circuit voltages of 2,001 volts and above must not be less than those listed for the applicable voltage in ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659 or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639, as applicable.

2.1.3.3 Stranding

Conductor stranding classes cited herein must be as defined for control conductors in NEMA WC 57 or as defined for 0-2,000 volts power conductors in NEMA WC 70, as applicable. Lighting conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller must be solid or have Class B or Class C stranding. Any conductors used between stationary and moving devices, such as hinged doors or panels, must have Class H or K stranding. All other conductors must have Class B or C stranding, except that conductors as shown, or in the schedule, as No. 12 AWG may be 19 strands of No. 25 AWG, and conductors shown as No. 10 AWG may be 19 strands of No. 22 AWG. Conductor stranding classes for circuit voltages 2,001 volts and above must be as defined in ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659 and NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639, as applicable.

2.1.3.4 Conductor Shielding

Use conductor shielding conforming to NEMA WC 57 for control wire and cable as applicable. Use conductor shielding conforming to ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659 or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639, as applicable, on power cables having a rated circuit voltage above 2,000 volts.

2.1.3.5 Separator Tape

Where conductor shielding, strand filling, or other special conductor treatment is not required, a separator tape between conductor and insulation is permitted.

2.1.4 Insulation

2.1.4.1 Insulation Material

Unless specified otherwise or required by NFPA 70, wires in conduit, other than service entrance, must be 600-volt, XHHW-2 conforming to UL 44. Insulation for control wire and cable must meet the requirements of NEMA WC 57. Insulation requirements for wire and cable rated less than 2,000 volts must meet the requirements of NEMA WC 70. PVC-based insulation is not acceptable.

2.1.4.2 Insulation Thickness

The insulation thickness for each conductor must be based on its rated circuit voltage.

2.1.4.2.1 Power Cables, 2,000 Volts and Below

The insulation thickness for single-conductor and multiple-conductor power cables rated 2,000 volts and below must be as required by NEMA WC 70, as applicable. Some thicknesses of NEMA WC 70 will be permitted only for single-conductor cross-linked thermosetting polyethylene insulated cables without a jacket. NEMA WC 70 ethylene-propylene rubber-insulated conductors must have a jacket.

2.1.4.2.2 Single-Conductor and Multiple-Conductor Control Cables

The insulation thickness of control conductor sizes 22 AWG to 10 AWG used for control and related purposes must be as required by NEMA WC 57, as applicable. Control conductors larger than 10 AWG must be as required by NEMA WC 70.

2.1.5 Jackets

All cables must have jackets meeting the requirements of NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, and NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639, as applicable, and as specified herein. Individual conductors of multiple-conductor cables must be required to have jackets only if they are necessary for the conductor to meet other specifications herein. Jackets of single-conductor cables and of individual conductors of multiple-conductor cables, except for shielded cables, must be in direct contact and adhere or be vulcanized to the conductor insulation. Multiple-conductor cables and shielded single-conductor cables must be provided with a common overall jacket, which must be tightly and concentrically formed around the core. Repaired jacket defects found and corrected during manufacturing are permitted if the cable, including jacket, afterward fully meets these specifications and the requirements of the applicable standards. PVC jackets are not acceptable unless specified on plans.

2.1.5.1 Jacket Material

The jacket must be one of the materials listed below. Polyvinyl chloride compounds will not be permitted. Variations from the materials required below will be permitted only if approved for each specific use, upon submittal of sufficient data to prove that they exceed all specified requirements for the particular application.

2.1.5.1.1 General Use

Heavy-duty black neoprene	NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639
Heavy-duty chlorosulfonated polyethylene	NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639

Heavy-duty cross-linked (thermoset) chlorinated polyethylene	NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639

2.1.5.1.2 Accessible Use Only, 2,000 Volts or Less

Cables installed where they are entirely accessible, such as cable trays and raceways with removable covers, or where they pass through less than 10 feet of exposed conduit only, must have jackets of one of the materials in item "a. General Use" or one of the following:

General-purpose neoprene	NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639
Black polyethylene (MDPE)	NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639
Thermoplastic chlorinated polyethylene	NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639

2.1.5.2 Jacket Thickness

The minimum thickness of the jackets must be not less than 80 percent of the respective nominal thicknesses specified below.

2.1.5.2.1 Multiple-Conductor Cables

Thickness of the jackets of the individual conductors of multiple-conductor cables must be as required by NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639 as applicable and must be in addition to the conductor insulation thickness required by the applicable respective NEMA publication for the insulation used. Thickness of the outer jackets and associated coverings of the assembled multiple-conductor cables must be as required by NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639 as applicable.

2.1.5.2.2 Single-Conductor Cables

Single-conductor cables must have a jacket thickness as specified in NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639 as applicable.

2.1.6 Multiple-Conductor Cables

Grounding conductor(s) conforming to NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639 as applicable must be furnished for each multiple-conductor cable. Assembly and cabling must be as specified in paragraph CABLING.

2.2 CABLE IDENTIFICATION

2.2.1 Cabling

Individual conductors of multiple-conductor cables must be assembled with

flame-and moisture-resistant fillers, binders, and a lay conforming to NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639. Flat twin cables are prohibited. Fillers must be used in the interstices of multiple-conductor round cables with a common covering where necessary to give the completed cable a substantially circular cross section. Fillers must be non-hygroscopic material, compatible with the cable insulation, jacket, and other components of the cable. The rubber-filled or other approved type of binding tape must consist of a material that is compatible with the other components of the cable and must be lapped at least 10 percent of its width.

2.2.2 Dimensional Tolerance

The outside diameters of single-conductor cables and of multiple-conductor cables must not vary more than 5 percent and 10 percent, respectively, from the manufacturer's published catalog data.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

Submit cable manufacturing data [as requested]. The following information must be provided by the cable manufacturer for each size, conductor quantity, and type of cable furnished:

a. Minimum bending radius, in inches - For multiple-conductor cables, this information must be provided for both the individual conductors and the multiple-conductor cable.

b. Pulling tension and sidewall pressure limits, in pounds.

c. Instructions for stripping semiconducting insulation shields, if furnished, with minimum effort without damaging the insulation.

d. Upon request, compatibility of cable materials and construction with specific materials and hardware manufactured by others must be stated. Also, if requested, recommendations must be provided for various cable operations, including installing, splicing, terminating, etc.

3.2 CABLE INSTALLATION PLAN

Provide a cable installation plan which includes the following for each raceway. Exclude raceways with less than 45 degrees of total bending or shorter than 20 feet.

a. Raceway name

b. Circuit names with wire sizes and quantities

c. Maximum tolerable pulling tension

d. Maximum tolerable sidewall pressure

e. Estimated maximum pulling tension

f. Estimated maximum sidewall pressure

g. Jam ratio

h. Lubricant and coefficient of friction

i. Pulling device(s)

j. Direction of pull

3.3 TEST REPORT(S), INSPECTION REPORT(S), AND VERIFICATION REPORT(S)

3.3.1 Cable Data

Do not begin any wire and cable fabrication until materials are submitted and approved by the Contracting Officer. Submit cable data for approval including, but not limited to, dimensioned sketches showing cable construction and sufficient additional data to show that wire and cable meet the requirements of this Section.

3.3.2 Inspection and Tests

The Government may require or perform further tests before or after installation. Testing in general must comply with NEMA WC 57, NEMA WC 70, ANSI/NEMA WC 71/ICEA S-96-659, or NEMA WC 74/ICEA S-93-639 as applicable. Specific tests required for particular materials, components, and completed cables must be as specified in the sections of the above standards applicable to those materials, components, and cable types. Tests must also be performed in accordance with the additional requirements specified below. Submit two certified copies of test reports.

All wires and cables shall have a continuity test performed between all phase-phase and phase-ground conductors. All 600V rated conductors shall be megger tested after installation at 1000V. All 300V rated conductors shall be megger tested after installation at 500V and applicable test reports submitted. Follow NETA-ATS (2021 edition) for testing procedures. All conductors rated over 1000V shall be tested per NETA-ATS standards.

3.3.2.1 High-Voltage Test Source

Where the applicable standards allow a choice, high-voltage tests for cables to be used exclusively on dc circuits must be made with dc test voltages. Cables to be used exclusively on ac circuits must be tested with ac test voltages. If both ac and dc will be present, on either the same or separate conductors of the cable, ac test voltages must be used.

3.3.2.2 Cable Installation Report

After installation, provide a report of each cable identified in the cable installation plan. Include the maximum applied pulling tension of each cable. Identify all cables with pulling tensions which exceeded 90% of the limit in the approved cable installation plan.

3.3.2.3 Independent Tests

The Contractor shall make visual inspections, continuity or resistance checks, insulation resistance readings, power factor tests, or dc high potential tests at field test values. A cable's failure to pass these tests and inspections, or failure to produce readings consistent with acceptable values for the application, will be grounds for rejection of the cable.

3.3.2.4 Reports

Furnish results of tests. Lot number and reel or coil number of wire and cable tested must be indicated on the test reports.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SECTION 26 05 48

SEISMIC PROTECTION FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

11/23

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 26 05 48

SEISMIC PROTECTION FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT
11/23

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)

ASCE 7-16	(2017; Errata 2018; Supp 1 2018) Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B18.21.1	(2009; R 2016) Washers: Helical Spring-Lock, Tooth Lock, and Plain Washers (Inch Series)
ASME B18.22M	(1981; R 2017) Metric Plain Washers

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M	(2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A53/A53M	(2024) Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless
ASTM A153/A153M	(2023) Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A307	(2021) Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength
ASTM A500/A500M	(2023) Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes
ASTM A563	(2021; E 2022a) Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts

ASTM A572/A572M	(2021; E 2021) Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel
ASTM A603	(2019) Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Structural Wire Rope
ASTM A992/A992M	(2022) Standard Specification for Structural Steel Shapes
ASTM E580/E580M	(2024) Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions
ASTM F436	(2011) Hardened Steel Washers
ASTM F959/F959M	(2017a; R 2023) Standard Specification for Compressible-Washer-Type Direct Tension Indicators for Use with Structural Fasteners, Inch and Metric Series
ASTM F3125/F3125M	(2019) Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts and Assemblies, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, Inch Dimensions 120 ksi and 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, and Metric Dimensions 830 MPa and 1040 MPa Minimum Tensile Strength

ICC EVALUATION SERVICE, INC. (ICC-ES)

ICC ES AC156	(2012) Acceptable Criteria for Seismic Certification by Shake-Table Testing of Nonstructural Components

INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)

ICC IBC	(2024) International Building Code

METAL FRAMING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (MFMA)

MFMA-4	(2004) Metal Framing Standards Publication

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

MIL-STD-810	(2022; Rev H; Change 1) Environmental Engineering Considerations and Laboratory Tests
UFC 3-301-01	(2023; with Change 2, 2024) Structural Engineering

UL SOLUTIONS (UL)

UL 1598	(2021; Reprint Jan 2024) UL Standard for Safety Luminaires

VIBRATION ISOLATION AND SEISMIC CONTROL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (VISCMA)

VISCMA 413 (2014) Installing Seismic Restraints for Electrical Equipment

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

1.2.1 General Requirements

Design and provide seismic supports and attachments in accordance with UFC 3-301-01 and ASCE 7-16.

Components, supports, and attachments must comply with following structural design criteria:

Risk Category: III
Seismic Design Category: D.
Seismic Design Spectral Response Acceleration Parameter at Short Period (SDS): [_____].
Seismic Design Spectral Response Acceleration Parameter at period of 1 second (SD1): [_____].

Apply the seismic requirements described in this section and on the drawings to the electrical components listed in paragraph ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS.

Electrical components and their supports must be attached or anchored to structure.

1.2.2 Electrical Components

Provide seismic supports and attachments for the following electrical components in accordance with the requirements of this specification:

Components with Importance Factor (Ip) = 1.0:
Control Panels
Light Fixtures
Motors
Distribution Systems Conduit

1.2.3 Contractor Designed Supports and Attachments

Provide seismic supports and attachments for electrical components.

Contractor must retain services of a Registered Professional Engineer to design supports and attachments for electrical components.

Submit copies of the Design Calculations and Design Drawings. Calculations and Drawings must be stamped and signed by Contractor's Registered Professional Engineer.]

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal

for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Equipment Requirements; G

Lighting Fixtures; G

SD-03 Product Data

Supports and Attachments; G

Equipment Requirements; G

Lighting Fixtures; G

Flexible Fittings; G

Anchors; G

SD-05 Design Data

Design Calculations; G

Design Drawings; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Anchors; G

SD-07 Certificates

ICC ES AC156 Shake Table Test; G

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

Equipment must be rugged enough to survive design seismic event.

Submit detail drawings of supports and attachments along with calculations, catalog cuts, templates, and erection and installation details, as appropriate, for the items listed in paragraph ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS. Indicate thickness, type, grade, class of metal, and dimensions; and show construction details, reinforcement, anchorage, and installation with relation to the building construction.

Submit calculations and drawings that are stamped and signed by Contractor's registered professional engineer. Design must be based on actual equipment and system layout. Design must include calculated loads and capacity of materials utilized for the connection of the equipment or system to the structure. Analysis must detail anchoring methods. Include drawing for Designated Seismic System Equipment indicating the equipment location in the facility to be used for the installation. Equipment must be rigidly or flexibly mounted as indicated. Roof mounted equipment both vibration isolated and nonisolated, must have support members designed and anchored to building structure.

2.1.1 Rigidly (Base and Suspended) Mounted Equipment

Equipment furnished under this Contract must be rigidly mounted. For any rigid equipment which is rigidly anchored, provide flexible joints for electrical conduit that are capable of accommodating displacements equal to the full width of the joint in both orthogonal directions.

2.2 LIGHTING FIXTURES

Provide lighting fixtures and supports and attachments conforming to UL 1598.

2.3 SUPPORTS AND ATTACHMENTS

Material used for members listed in this section and on the drawings, must conform with the following:

a. Plates, rods, and rolled shapes, ASTM A36/A36M, ASTM A572/A572M Grade 50, or ASTM A992/A992M.

b. Wire rope, ASTM A603 pre-stretched, with Class B weight zinc-coated wires throughout rope. Connect rope at ends using ferrule or saddle-type wire rope clamp systems. Ferrule clamps must be qualified by testing for use in seismic applications per VISCMA 413. Saddle-type clamps must be used with minimum of two clamps at each end of wire rope.

c. Tubes, ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B.

d. Pipes, ASTM A53/A53M, Grade B.

e. Angles, ASTM A36/A36M.

f. Channels (Struts) with in-turned lips and associated hardware for fastening to channels at discrete points conforming to MFMA-4.

g. Fasteners:

(1) High-strength bolts, ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, heavy hex.

(2) Nuts, ASTM A563. Use heavy hex nuts for high strength bolts and anchor bolts.

(3) Washers, ASME B18.22M and ASME B18.21.1, except use ASTM F436 washers for high strength bolts.

(4) Galvanized coating, ASTM A153/A153M.

(5) Direct Tension Indicator Washers, ASTM F959/F959M. Submit product data for direct tension indicator washers.

(6) Standard bolts, ASTM A307.

h. Anchor bolts:

(1) Cast in anchors: Refer to Section 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL for requirements.

(2) Post-installed anchors: Refer to Section 05 05 20 POST-INSTALLED

CONCRETE AND MASONRY ANCHORS for requirements.

i. Welding: Refer to Section 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL for requirements.

2.4 FLEXIBLE FITTINGS

Provide flexible fittings to allow conduit systems to accommodate seismic movement between equipment and conduit systems and supporting structure. Use specification grade steel fittings conforming to MIL-STD-810. Provide suitable watertight expansion fittings that maintain electrical continuity by bonding jumper or other means.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SUPPORTS AND ATTACHMENTS

Provide supports and attachments with continuous load path to distribute electrical component seismic loads to structure.

Provide supports and attachments for electrical components that conform to UFC 3-301-01 requirements. Install vertical diagonal braces at a 45-degree slope. Where interference is present, the slope may be minimum of 30 degrees or a maximum of 60 degrees per VISCMA 413.

Provide bolted and welded connections for supports and attachments in accordance with UFC 3-301-01.

Provide welding in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.2 BUILDING DRIFT

Do not attach electrical components to two dissimilar structural elements of a building that may respond differentially during an earthquake unless a flexible joint is provided. Electrical components, supports, and attachments must be capable of accommodating building story drifts, deflections, and relative displacements.

3.3 CONDUIT

Provide supports and attachments for conduit conforming to the requirements of UFC 3-301-01.

3.4 LIGHTING FIXTURES

Provide lighting fixtures and supports conforming to the following:

3.4.1 Pendant Fixtures

Provide pendant fixtures conforming to the requirements of UFC 3-301-01.

3.4.2 Ceiling Attached Fixtures

3.4.2.1 Recessed Fixtures

Support recessed individual or continuous-row mounted fixtures by a seismic-resistant suspended ceiling support system built in accordance with ASTM E580/E580M. Provide supports and attachments for the fixtures conforming to the requirements of UFC 3-301-01. Recessed lighting fixtures not over 56 pounds in weight and not required to be supported

separately from the structure, may be supported by and attached directly to the ceiling system runners using screws or bolts, number and size as required by the seismic design. Provide lock or screw attachments for fixture accessories, including diffusers and lenses.

3.4.2.2 Surface-Mounted Fixtures

Attach surface-mounted individual or continuous-row fixtures to a seismic-resistant ceiling support system built in accordance with ASTM E580/E580M. Provide supports and attachments for the fixtures conforming to the requirements of UFC 3-301-01.

3.4.3 Assembly Mounted on Outlet Box

Design a supporting assembly, that is intended to be mounted on an outlet box, to accommodate mounting features on 4 inch boxes, plaster rings, and fixture studs.

3.4.4 Wall-Mounted Emergency Light Unit

Design and secure attachments for wall-mounted emergency light units for the worst expected seismic disturbance at the site.

3.5 ANCHORS

3.5.1 General

Submit copies of test results to verify the adequacy of the specific anchor and application, as specified. Ensure housekeeping pads have adequate space to mount equipment and seismic restraint devices allowing adequate edge distance and embedment depth for restraint anchor bolts. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for post-installed anchors. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.

3.5.2 Cast-In-Place Anchors

Use templates to locate cast-in-place bolts accurately and securely in formwork. Provide anchor bolts with an embedded straight length with heavy hex nut and washer as to provide required strength and ductility. Anchor bolts that exceed the normal depth of equipment foundation piers or pads must either extend into concrete floor or the foundation or increase depth of the piers or pads to accommodate bolt lengths.

3.5.3 Post-Installed Anchors

Refer to Section 05 05 20 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE AND MASONRY ANCHORS for requirements.

3.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS

3.6.1 Suspended Equipment

Provide supports and attachments for components supported from structural systems. Provide supports and attachments that consist of angles, rods, wire rope, bars, channels (struts) or pipes arranged as shown in bracing submittals and secured at both ends with not less than 1/2 inch bolts. Provide sufficient supports and attachments to resist seismic forces as

specified in UFC 3-301-01 without exceeding capacity of structural components. Provide, for approval, specific force calculations in accordance with UFC 3-301-01 for the project.

Submit details of supports and attachments for acceptance. In lieu of bracing with vertical supports, these items may be supported with hangers inclined at 45 degrees directed up and radially away from equipment and oriented symmetrically in 90-degree intervals on the horizontal plane, bisecting the angles of each corner of the equipment, provided that supporting members are properly sized to support operating weight when hangers are inclined. Where interference is present, the inclined hanger slope may be minimum of 30 degrees or a maximum of 60 degrees per VISCMA 413.

3.6.2 Floor or Pad Mounted Equipment

3.6.2.1 Shear Resistance

Bolt components to floor or pads. Provide bolts to resist seismic forces in accordance with paragraph ANCHORS.

3.6.2.2 Overturning Resistance

Use the ratio of the overturning moment from seismic forces to the resisting moment due to gravity loads to determine if overturning forces need to be considered in the sizing of anchor bolts. Provide calculations to verify the adequacy of the anchor bolts for combined shear and tension. Provide bolts to resist seismic forces in accordance with paragraph ANCHORS.

3.7 SPECIAL TESTING FOR SEISMIC-RESISTING COMPONENTS

Electrical components designated as Designated Seismic Systems required to remain operational after an earthquake must be seismic qualified by shake table testing conforming to ICC ES AC156 Shake Table Test procedures. The manufacturer is to provide a certification by a fully qualified testing agency for the specific components. Prequalified certifications are acceptable unless noted otherwise.

Components that are required to be certified must bear permanent marking or nameplates constructed of a durable heat and water resistant material.

Provide component identification nameplates in accordance with UFC 3-301-01.

Mechanically attach nameplates to electrical components.

3.8 SPECIAL INSPECTION FOR COMPONENTS, SUPPORTS, AND ATTACHMENTS

Perform special inspections for seismic-resisting systems, designated seismic systems, components, supports and attachments, and equipment per ICC IBC 1705.13.4; electrical components per ICC IBC 1705.13.6.

Provide a Final Special Inspection Report in accordance with UFC 3-301-01 .

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SECTION 26 20 00

INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

08/23

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 26 20 00

INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM
08/23

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM B1	(2013) Standard Specification for Hard-Drawn Copper Wire
ASTM B8	(2023) Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft
ASTM D709	(2017) Standard Specification for Laminated Thermosetting Materials

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE Stds Dictionary	(2009) IEEE Standards Dictionary: Glossary of Terms & Definitions

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS	(2021) Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (NECA)

NECA NEIS 1	(2015) Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

ANSI C80.1	(2020) American National Standard for Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit (ERSC)
ANSI C80.3	(2020) American National Standard for Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT)
ANSI C80.5	(2020) American National Standard for Electrical Rigid Aluminum Conduit
NEMA FU 1	(2012) Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses
NEMA ICS 1	(2022) Standard for Industrial Control and Systems: General Requirements

NEMA ICS 2	(2000; R 2020) Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V
NEMA ICS 3	(2005; R 2010) Medium-Voltage Controllers Rated 2001 to 7200 V AC
NEMA ICS 6	(1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures
NEMA KS 1	(2013) Enclosed and Miscellaneous Distribution Equipment Switches (600 V Maximum)
NEMA RN 1	(2005; R 2013) Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit
NEMA TC 2	(2020) Standard for Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit
NEMA TC 3	(2021) Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings for Use With Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing
NEMA WD 1	(1999; R 2020) Standard for General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices
NEMA Z535.4	(2023) Product Safety Signs and Labels

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2023) National Electrical Code
NFPA 70E	(2024) Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace

TELECOMMUNICATIONS INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION (TIA)

TIA-607	(2019d) Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

29 CFR 1910.147	The Control of Hazardous Energy (Lock Out/Tag Out)
29 CFR 1910.303	Electrical, General

UL SOLUTIONS (UL)

UL 1	(2005; Reprint Jan 2022) UL Standard for Safety Flexible Metal Conduit
UL 6	(2022) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel
UL 6A	(2008; Reprint Mar 2021) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit -

	Aluminum, Red Brass, and Stainless Steel
UL 20	(2018; Reprint May 2023) UL Standard for Safety General-Use Snap Switches
UL 44	(2018; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for Safety Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables
UL 50	(2024) UL Standard for Safety Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations
UL 83	(2017; Reprint Mar 2020) UL Standard for Safety Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables
UL 248-4	(2010; Reprint Apr 2019) Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 4: Class CC Fuses
UL 248-8	(2011; Reprint Aug 2020) Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 8: Class J Fuses
UL 248-10	(2011; Reprint Aug 2020) Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 10: Class L Fuses
UL 248-12	(2011; Reprint Aug 2020) Low Voltage Fuses - Part 12: Class R Fuses
UL 248-15	(2018) Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 15: Class T Fuses
UL 360	(2013; Reprint Jan 2024) UL Standard for Safety Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit
UL 486A-486B	(2018; Reprint Jul 2023) UL Standard for Safety Wire Connectors
UL 486C	(2018; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for Safety Splicing Wire Connectors
UL 489	(2016; Rev 2019) UL Standard for Safety Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures
UL 510	(2020; Dec 2022) UL Standard for Safety Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene and Rubber Insulating Tape
UL 514B	(2012; Reprint Mar 2024) UL Standard for Safety Conduit, Tubing and Cable Fittings
UL 651	(2011; Reprint May 2022) UL Standard for Safety Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings
UL 797	(2007; Reprint Apr 2023) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Metallic Tubing -- Steel
UL 845	(2021) UL Standard for Safety Motor

	Control Centers
UL 984	(1996; Reprint Sep 2005) Hermetic Refrigerant Motor-Compressors
UL 1242	(2006; Reprint Apr 2022) UL Standard for Safety Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit -- Steel
UL 4248-1	(2022) UL Standard for Safety Fuseholders - Part 1: General Requirements
UL 4248-12	(2018; Reprint Feb 2022) UL Standard for Safety Fuseholders - Part 12: Class R

1.2 DEFINITIONS

Unless otherwise specified or indicated, electrical and electronics terms used in these specifications, and on the drawings, are as defined in IEEE Stds Dictionary.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

Section 25 05 11 CYBERSECURITY FOR FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS applies to this section, with the additions and modifications specified herein.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Motor Control Centers; G

Control Panel; G

SD-03 Product Data

Switches; G

SD-06 Test Reports

600-volt Wiring Test; G

SD-07 Certificates

Fuses; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Electrical Systems, Data Package 5; G

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.5.1 Fuses

Submit coordination data as specified in paragraph, FUSES of this section.

1.5.2 Regulatory Requirements

In each of the publications referred to herein, consider the advisory provisions to be mandatory, as though the word, "must" had been substituted for "should" wherever it appears. Interpret references in these publications to the "authority having jurisdiction," or words of similar meaning, to mean the Contracting Officer. Provide equipment, materials, installation, and workmanship in accordance with NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are specified or indicated. NECA NEIS 1 shall be considered the minimum standard for workmanship.

1.5.3 Standard Products

Provide materials and equipment that are products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the production of such products which are of equal material, design and workmanship and:

a. Have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to bid opening including applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size.

b. Have been on sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures during the 2-year period.

c. Where two or more items of the same class of equipment are required, provide products of a single manufacturer; however, the component parts of the item need not be the products of the same manufacturer unless stated in this section.

1.5.3.1 Alternative Qualifications

Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation for not less than 6000 hours, exclusive of the manufacturers' factory or laboratory tests, is furnished.

1.5.3.2 Material and Equipment Manufacturing Date

Products manufactured more than 3 years prior to date of delivery to site are not acceptable.

1.6 MAINTENANCE

1.6.1 Electrical Systems

Submit operation and maintenance data in accordance with Section 01 78 23, OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA and as specified herein. Submit operation and maintenance manuals for electrical systems that provide basic data relating to the design, operation, and maintenance of the electrical distribution system for the building. Include the following:

a. Single line diagram of the "as-built" building electrical system.

b. Schematic diagram of electrical control system (other than HVAC, covered elsewhere).

c. Manufacturers' operating and maintenance manuals on active electrical equipment.

1.7 WARRANTY

Provide equipment items supported by service organizations that are reasonably convenient to the equipment installation in order to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

As a minimum, meet requirements of UL, where UL standards are established for those items, and requirements of NFPA 70 for all materials, equipment, and devices.

2.2 CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

Conform to the following:

2.2.1 Rigid Metallic Conduit

2.2.1.1 Rigid, Threaded Zinc-Coated Steel Conduit

ANSI C80.1, UL 6.

2.2.1.2 Rigid Aluminum Conduit

ANSI C80.5, UL 6A.

2.2.2 Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

PVC Type EPC-40, and EPC-8] in accordance with NEMA TC 2,UL 651.

2.2.3 Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC)

UL 1242, zinc-coated steel only.

2.2.4 Electrical, Zinc-Coated Steel Metallic Tubing (EMT)

UL 797, ANSI C80.3.

2.2.5 Plastic-Coated Rigid Steel and IMC Conduit

NEMA RN 1, Type 40(40 mils thick).

2.2.6 Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 1, limited to 6 feet.

2.2.6.1 Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit, Steel

UL 360, limited to 6 feet.

2.2.7 Fittings for Metal Conduit, EMT, and Flexible Metal Conduit

UL 514B. Ferrous fittings: cadmium- or zinc-coated in accordance with UL 514B.

2.2.7.1 Fittings for Rigid Metal Conduit and IMC

Threaded-type. Split couplings unacceptable.

2.2.7.2 Fittings for EMT

Steel compression type.

2.2.8 Fittings for Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit

NEMA TC 3 for PVC, and UL 514B.

2.3 CABINETS, JUNCTION BOXES, AND PULL BOXES

UL 50; volume greater than 100 cubic inches, NEMA Type 1 enclosure; sheet steel, hot-dip, zinc-coated. Where exposed to wet, damp, or corrosive environments, NEMA Type 3Ras indicated.

2.4 WIRES AND CABLES

Provide wires and cables in accordance applicable requirements of NFPA 70 and UL for type of insulation, jacket, and conductor specified or indicated. Do not use wires and cables manufactured more than 24 months prior to date of delivery to site.

2.4.1 Conductors

Provide the following:

a. Conductor sizes and capacities shown are based on copper, unless indicated otherwise.

b. Conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter: stranded.

c. Conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter: solid.

d. Conductors for remote control, alarm, and signal circuits, classes 1, 2, and 3: stranded unless specifically indicated otherwise.

2.4.1.1 Minimum Conductor Sizes

Provide minimum conductor size in accordance with the following:

a. Branch circuits: No. 12 AWG.

b. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits: No. 14 AWG.

c. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits: No. 16 AWG.

d. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits: No. 22 AWG.

2.4.2 Color Coding

Provide color coding for service, feeder, branch, control, and signaling circuit conductors.

2.4.2.1 Ground and Neutral Conductors

Provide color coding of ground and neutral conductors as follows:

a. Grounding conductors: Green.

b. Neutral conductors: White.

c. Exception, where neutrals of more than one system are installed in same raceway or box, other neutrals color coding: white with a different colored (not green) stripe for each.

2.4.2.2 Ungrounded Conductors

Provide color coding of ungrounded conductors in different voltage systems as follows:

a. 208/120 volt, three-phase

(1) Phase A - black

(2) Phase B - red

(3) Phase C - blue

b. 480/277 volt, three-phase

(1) Phase A - brown

(2) Phase B - orange

(3) Phase C - yellow

c. 120/240 volt, single phase: Black and red

2.4.3 Insulation

Unless specified or indicated otherwise or required by NFPA 70, provide power and lighting wires rated for 600-volts, Type XHHW conforming to UL 44, except that grounding wire may be type TW conforming to UL 83; remote-control and signal circuits: Type TW or TF, conforming to UL 83. Where equipment or devices require 90-degree Centigrade (C) conductors, provide only conductors with 90-degree C insulation or better.

2.4.4 Bonding Conductors

ASTM B1, solid bare copper wire for sizes No. 8 AWG and smaller diameter; ASTM B8, Class B, stranded bare copper wire for sizes No. 6 AWG and larger diameter.

2.5 SPLICES AND TERMINATION COMPONENTS

UL 486A-486B for wire connectors and UL 510 for insulating tapes. Connectors for No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter wires: insulated,

pressure-type in accordance with UL 486A-486B or UL 486C (twist-on splicing connector). Provide solderless terminal lugs on stranded conductors.

2.6 DEVICE PLATES

Provide the following:

a. UL listed, one-piece device plates for outlets to suit the devices installed.

b. For metal outlet boxes, plates on unfinished walls: zinc-coated sheet steel or cast metal having round or beveled edges.

c. For nonmetallic boxes and fittings, other suitable plates may be provided.

d. Sectional type device plates are not be permitted.

e. Plates installed in wet locations: gasketed and UL listed for "wet locations."

2.7 SWITCHES

2.7.1 Toggle Switches

NEMA WD 1, UL 20, single pole, double pole, three-way, and four-way, totally enclosed with bodies of thermoplastic or thermoset plastic and mounting strap with grounding screw. Include the following:

a. Handles: white thermoplastic.

b. Wiring terminals: screw-type, side-wired.

c. Contacts: silver-cadmium and contact arm - one-piece copper alloy.

d. Switches: rated quiet-type ac only, 120/277 volts, with current rating and number of poles indicated.

2.7.2 Switch with Red Pilot Handle

NEMA WD 1. Provide the following:

a. Pilot lights that are integrally constructed as a part of the switch's handle.

b. Pilot light color: red and illuminate whenever the switch is closed or "on".

c. Pilot lighted switch: rated 20 amps and 120 volts or 277 volts as indicated.

d. The circuit's neutral conductor to each switch with a pilot light.

2.7.3 Disconnect Switches

NEMA KS 1. Provide heavy duty-type switches where indicated, where switches are rated higher than 240 volts, and for double-throw switches. Utilize Class R fuseholders and fuses for fused switches, unless indicated

otherwise. Provide horsepower rated for switches serving as the motor-disconnect means. Provide switches in NEMA 1 Type 304 stainless steel, enclosure per NEMA ICS 6.

2.8 FUSES

NEMA FU 1. Provide complete set of fuses for each fusible[switch][panel][and control center]. Coordinate time-current characteristics curves of fuses serving motors or connected in series with circuit breakers[or other circuit protective devices] for proper operation. Submit coordination data for approval. Provide fuses with a voltage rating not less than circuit voltage.

2.8.1 Fuseholders

Provide in accordance with UL 4248-1.

2.8.2 Cartridge Fuses, Current Limiting Type (Class R)

UL 248-12, Class RK-1. Provide only Class R associated fuseholders in accordance with UL 4248-12.

2.8.3 Cartridge Fuses, High-Interrupting Capacity, Current Limiting Type (Classes J, L, and CC)

UL 248-8, UL 248-10, UL 248-4, Class J for zero to 600 amperes, Class L for 601 to 6,000 amperes, and Class CC for zero to 30 amperes.

2.8.4 Cartridge Fuses, Current Limiting Type (Class T)

UL 248-15, Class T for zero to 1,200 amperes, 300 volts; and zero to 800 amperes, 600 volts.

2.9 CONTROL PANEL

Provide a brush system control panelpanelboards in accordance with the following:

a. Power source input: 480 volts ac, 3 phase, 60 hz.

b. Control panel complete with hand held pendant controller.

c. Relay and programmable logic control (PLC) system with remote input and monitoring contacts available.

d. Automatic, continuous, and manual modes of operation.

2.10 ENCLOSED CIRCUIT BREAKERS

UL 489. Individual molded case circuit breakers with voltage and continuous current ratings, number of poles, overload trip setting, and short circuit current interrupting rating as indicated. Enclosure type as indicated.

2.11 MOTORS

Provide motors in accordance with the following:

a. Hermetic-type sealed motor compressors: Also comply with UL 984.

b. Provide the size in terms of HP, or kVA, or full-load current, or a combination of these characteristics, and other characteristics, of each motor as indicated or specified.

c. Determine specific motor characteristics to ensure provision of correctly sized starters and overload heaters.

d. Rate motors for operation on 208-volt, 3-phase circuits with a terminal voltage rating of 200 volts, and those for operation on 480-volt, 3-phase circuits with a terminal voltage rating of 460 volts.

e. Use motors designed to operate at full capacity with voltage variation of plus or minus 10 percent of motor voltage rating.

f. Unless otherwise indicated, use continuous duty type motors if rated 1 HP and above.

g. Where fuse protection is specifically recommended by the equipment manufacturer, provide fused switches in lieu of non-fused switches indicated.

2.11.1 Motor Sizes

Provide size for duty to be performed, not exceeding the full-load nameplate current rating when driven equipment is operated at specified capacity under most severe conditions likely to be encountered. When motor size provided differs from size indicated or specified, make adjustments to wiring, disconnect devices, and branch circuit protection to accommodate equipment actually provided. Provide controllers for motors rated 1-hp and above with electronic phase-voltage monitors designed to protect motors from phase-loss, undervoltage, and overvoltage. Provide protection for motors from immediate restart by a time adjustable restart relay.

2.11.2 Wiring and Conduit

Provide internal wiring for components of packaged equipment as an integral part of the equipment. Provide power wiring and conduit for field-installed equipment as specified herein. Power wiring and conduit: conform to the requirements specified herein. Control wiring: provided under, and conform to, the requirements of the section specifying the associated equipment.

2.12 MOTOR CONTROL CENTERS

Submit wiring diagrams and installation details of equipment indicating proposed location, layout and arrangement, control panels, accessories, piping, ductwork, and other items that must be shown to ensure a coordinated installation. Identify circuit terminals on wiring diagrams and indicate the internal wiring for each item of equipment and the interconnection between each item of equipment. Indicate on the drawings adequate clearance for operation, maintenance, and replacement of operating equipment devices.

Provide motor control centers in accordance with the following:

a. UL 845, NEMA ICS 2, NEMA ICS 3.

b. Interconnecting wires: copper.

c. Terminal blocks: plug-in-type so that controllers may be removed without disconnecting individual control wiring.

2.13 LOCKOUT REQUIREMENTS

Provide circuit breakers, disconnecting means, and other devices that are electrical energy-isolating capable of being locked out for machines and other equipment to prevent unexpected startup or release of stored energy in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.147, NFPA 70E and 29 CFR 1910.303. Comply with requirements of Division 23, "Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning (HVAC)" for mechanical isolation of machines and other equipment.

2.14 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATE

Provide on each item of equipment a nameplate bearing the manufacturer's name, address, model number, and serial number securely affixed in a conspicuous place; the nameplate of the distributing agent will not be acceptable.

2.15 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES

Provide field fabricated nameplates in accordance with the following:

a. ASTM D709.

b. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for each equipment enclosure, relay, switch, and device; as specified or as indicated on the drawings.

c. Each nameplate inscription: identify the function and, when applicable, the position.

d. Nameplates: melamine plastic, 0.125 inch thick, white with black center core.

e. Surface: matte finish. Corners: square. Accurately align lettering and engrave into the core.

f. Minimum size of nameplates: one by 2.5 inches.

g. Lettering size and style: a minimum of 0.25 inch high normal block style.

2.16 WARNING SIGNS

Provide warning signs for flash protection in accordance with NFPA 70E and NEMA Z535.4 for switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, and motor control centers that are in other than dwelling occupancies and are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized. Provide field installed signs to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc flash hazards when warning signs are not provided by the manufacturer. Provide marking that is clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Electrical installations, including weatherproof and hazardous locations and ducts, plenums and other air-handling spaces: conform to requirements of NFPA 70 and to requirements specified herein.

3.1.1 Underground Service

Underground service conductors and associated conduit: continuous from service entrance equipment to outdoor power system connection.

3.1.2 Service Entrance Identification

Service entrance disconnect devices, switches, and enclosures: labeled and identified as such.

3.1.2.1 Labels

Wherever work results in service entrance disconnect devices in more than one enclosure, as permitted by NFPA 70, label each enclosure, new and existing, as one of several enclosures containing service entrance disconnect devices. Label, at minimum: indicate number of service disconnect devices housed by enclosure and indicate total number of enclosures that contain service disconnect devices. Provide laminated plastic labels conforming to paragraph FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATES. Use lettering of at least 0.25 inch in height, and engrave on black-on-white matte finish. Service entrance disconnect devices in more than one enclosure: provided only as permitted by NFPA 70.

3.1.3 Wiring Methods

Provide insulated conductors installed in rigid steel conduit, IMC, rigid nonmetallic conduit, or EMT, except where specifically indicated or specified otherwise or required by NFPA 70 to be installed otherwise. Grounding conductor: separate from electrical system neutral conductor. Provide insulated green equipment grounding conductor for circuit(s) installed in conduit and raceways. Minimum conduit size: 1/2 inch in diameter for low voltage lighting and power circuits. Vertical distribution in multiple story buildings: made with metal conduit in fire-rated shafts, with metal conduit extending through shafts for minimum distance of 6 inches.

3.1.3.1 Pull Wire

Install pull wires in empty conduits. Pull wire: plastic having minimum 200-pound force tensile strength. Leave minimum 36 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.

3.1.4 Conduit Installation

Unless indicated otherwise, conceal conduit under floor slabs and within finished walls, ceilings, and floors. Install conduit parallel with or at right angles to ceilings, walls, and structural members where located above accessible ceilings and where conduit will be visible after completion of project.

3.1.4.1 Restrictions Applicable to Aluminum Conduit

a. Do not install underground or encase in concrete or masonry.

b. Do not use brass or bronze fittings.

c. Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

3.1.4.2 Restrictions Applicable to EMT

a. Do not install underground.

b. Do not encase in concrete, mortar, grout, or other cementitious materials.

c. Do not use in areas subject to physical damage including but not limited to equipment rooms where moving or replacing equipment could physically damage the EMT.

d. Do not use in hazardous areas.

e. Do not use outdoors.

f. Do not use in fire pump rooms.

g. Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

3.1.4.3 Restrictions Applicable to Nonmetallic Conduit

a. PVC Schedule 40.

(1) Do not use where subject to physical damage, including but not limited to, mechanical equipment rooms, electrical equipment rooms, fire pump rooms, and where restrictions are applying to both PVC Schedule 40 and PVC Schedule 80.

(2) Do not use above grade, except where allowed in this section for rising through floor slab or indicated otherwise.

b. PVC Schedule 80.

(1) Do not use where subject to physical damage, including but not limited to, hospitals, power plant, missile magazines, and other such areas.

(2) Do not use in hazardous (classified) areas.

(3) Do not use in penetrating fire-rated walls or partitions, or fire-rated floors.

-

3.1.4.4 Restrictions Applicable to Flexible Conduit

Use only as specified in paragraph FLEXIBLE CONNECTIONS. Do not use when the enclosed conductors must be shielded from the effects of High-altitude Electromagnetic Pulse (HEMP).

3.1.4.5 Conduit Support

Support conduit by pipe straps, wall brackets, threaded rod conduit hangers, or ceiling trapeze. Plastic cable ties are not acceptable. Fasten by wood screws to wood; by toggle bolts on hollow masonry units; by concrete inserts or expansion bolts on concrete or brick; and by machine screws, welded threaded studs, or spring-tension clamps on steel work. Threaded C-clamps may be used on rigid steel conduit only. Do not weld conduits or pipe straps to steel structures. Do not exceed one-fourth proof test load for load applied to fasteners. Provide vibration resistant and shock-resistant fasteners attached to concrete ceiling. Do not cut main reinforcing bars for any holes cut to depth of more than 1 1/2 inches in reinforced concrete beams or to depth of more than 3/4 inch in concrete joints. Fill unused holes. In partitions of light steel construction, use sheet metal screws. In suspended-ceiling construction, run conduit above ceiling. Do not support conduit by ceiling support system. Conduit and box systems: supported independently of both (a) tie wires supporting ceiling grid system, and (b) ceiling grid system into which ceiling panels are placed. Do not share supporting means between electrical raceways and mechanical piping or ducts. Identify independent conduit support in both fire and non-fire rated assemblies per NFPA 70. Coordinate installation with above-ceiling mechanical systems to assure maximum accessibility to all systems. Spring-steel fasteners may be used for lighting branch circuit conduit supports in suspended ceilings in dry locations. For conduits greater than 2 1/2 inches inside diameter, provide supports to resist forces of 0.5 times the equipment weight in any direction and 1.5 times the equipment weight in the downward direction.

3.1.4.6 Directional Changes in Conduit Runs

Make changes in direction of runs with symmetrical bends or cast-metal fittings. Make field-made bends and offsets with hickey or conduit-bending machine. Do not install crushed or deformed conduits. Avoid trapped conduits. Prevent plaster, dirt, or trash from lodging in conduits, boxes, fittings, and equipment during construction. Free clogged conduits of obstructions.

3.1.4.7 Locknuts and Bushings

Fasten conduits to sheet metal boxes and cabinets with two locknuts where required by NFPA 70, where insulated bushings are used, and where bushings cannot be brought into firm contact with the box; otherwise, use at least minimum single locknut and bushing. Provide locknuts with sharp edges for digging into wall of metal enclosures. Install bushings on ends of conduits, and provide insulating type where required by NFPA 70.

3.1.4.8 Flexible Connections

Provide flexible steel conduit between 3 and 6 feet in length for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures. Install flexible conduit to allow 20 percent slack. Minimum flexible steel conduit size: 1/2 inch diameter. Provide liquid tight flexible conduit in wet and damp locations for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, movement or motors. Provide separate ground conductor across flexible connections. Plastic cable ties are not acceptable as a support method.

3.1.5 Boxes, Outlets, and Supports

Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling

of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures. Boxes for metallic raceways: cast-metal, hub-type when located in wet locations, when surface mounted on outside of exterior surfaces, and when specifically indicated. Boxes in other locations: sheet steel, except that aluminum boxes may be used with aluminum conduit, and nonmetallic boxes may be used with nonmetallic conduit system. Provide each box with volume required by NFPA 70 for number of conductors enclosed in box. Boxes for mounting lighting fixtures: minimum 4 inches square, or octagonal, except that smaller boxes may be installed as required by fixture configurations, as approved. Boxes for use in masonry-block or tile walls: square-cornered, tile-type, or standard boxes having square-cornered, tile-type covers. Provide gaskets for cast-metal boxes installed in wet locations and boxes installed flush with outside of exterior surfaces. Provide separate boxes for flush or recessed fixtures when required by fixture terminal operating temperature; provide readily removable fixtures for access to boxes unless ceiling access panels are provided. Support boxes and pendants for surface-mounted fixtures on suspended ceilings independently of ceiling supports. Fasten boxes and supports with wood screws on wood, with bolts and expansion shields on concrete or brick, with toggle bolts on hollow masonry units, and with machine screws or welded studs on steel. In open overhead spaces, cast boxes threaded to raceways need not be separately supported except where used for fixture support; support sheet metal boxes directly from building structure or by bar hangers. Where bar hangers are used, attach bar to raceways on opposite sides of box, and support raceway with approved-type fastener maximum 24 inches from box. When penetrating reinforced concrete members, avoid cutting reinforcing steel.

3.1.5.1 Boxes

Boxes for use with raceway systems: minimum 1 1/2 inches deep, except where shallower boxes required by structural conditions are approved. Boxes for other than lighting fixture outlets: minimum 4 inches square, except that 4 by 2 inch boxes may be used where only one raceway enters outlet.

3.1.5.2 Pull Boxes

Construct of at least minimum size required by NFPA 70. Provide boxes with screw-fastened covers. Where several feeders pass through common pull box, tag feeders to indicate clearly electrical characteristics, circuit number, and panel designation.

3.1.6 Mounting Heights

Mount panelboards, circuit breakers, motor controller and disconnecting switches so height of center of grip of the operating handle of the switch or circuit breaker at its highest position is maximum 79 inches above floor or working platform or as allowed in Section 404.8 per NFPA 70. Mount lighting switches 48 inches above finished floor. Mount receptacles 18 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated. Mount other devices as indicated.

3.1.7 Conductor Identification

Provide conductor identification within each enclosure where tap, splice, or termination is made. For conductors No. 6 AWG and smaller diameter, provide color coding by factory-applied, color-impregnated insulation. For conductors No. 4 AWG and larger diameter, provide color coding by

plastic-coated, self-sticking markers; colored nylon cable ties and plates; or heat shrink-type sleeves. Identify control circuit terminations in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.7.1 Marking Strips

Provide marking strips for identification of power distribution, control, data, and communications cables in accordance with the following:

a. Provide white or other light-colored plastic marking strips, fastened by screws to each terminal block, for wire designations.

b. Use permanent ink for the wire numbers

c. Provide reversible marking strips to permit marking both sides, or provide two marking strips with each block.

d. Size marking strips to accommodate the two sets of wire numbers.

e. Assign a device designation in accordance with NEMA ICS 1 to each device to which a connection is made. Mark each device terminal to which a connection is made with a distinct terminal marking corresponding to the wire designation used on the Contractor's schematic and connection diagrams.

f. The wire (terminal point) designations used on the Contractor's wiring diagrams and printed on terminal block marking strips may be according to the Contractor's standard practice; however, provide additional wire and cable designations for identification of remote (external) circuits for the Government's wire designations.

g. Prints of the marking strips drawings submitted for approval will be so marked and returned to the Contractor for addition of the designations to the terminal strips and tracings, along with any rearrangement of points required.

3.1.8 Splices

Make splices in accessible locations. Make splices in conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter with insulated, pressure-type connector. Make splices in conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter with solderless connector, and cover with insulation material equivalent to conductor insulation.

3.1.9 Covers and Device Plates

Install with edges in continuous contact with finished wall surfaces without use of mats or similar devices. Plaster fillings are not permitted. Install plates with alignment tolerance of 1/16 inch. Use of sectional-type device plates are not permitted. Provide gasket for plates installed in wet locations.

3.1.10 Electrical Penetrations

Seal openings around electrical penetrations through fire resistance-rated walls, partitions, floors, or ceilings in accordance with Section 07 84 00 FIRESTOPPING.

3.1.11 Grounding and Bonding

Provide in accordance with NFPA 70. Ground exposed, non-current-carrying metallic parts of electrical equipment, metallic raceway systems, grounding conductor in metallic and nonmetallic raceways, telecommunications system grounds, and neutral conductor of wiring systems. Interconnect all grounding media in or on the structure to provide a common ground potential. This includes lightning protection, electrical service, telecommunications system grounds, as well as underground metallic piping systems. Make interconnection to the gas line on the customer's side of the meter. Use main size lightning conductors for interconnecting these grounding systems to the lightning protection system. In addition to the requirements specified herein, provide telecommunications grounding in accordance with TIA-607. Where ground fault protection is employed, ensure that connection of ground and neutral does not interfere with correct operation of fault protection.

3.1.12 Equipment Connections

Provide power wiring for the connection of motors and control equipment under this section of the specification. Except as otherwise specifically noted or specified, automatic control wiring, control devices, and protective devices within the control circuitry are not included in this section of the specifications and are provided under the section specifying the associated equipment.

3.1.13 Repair of Existing Work

3.1.13.1 Workmanship

Lay out work in advance. Exercise care where cutting, channeling, chasing, or drilling of floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, or other surfaces is necessary for proper installation, support, or anchorage of conduit, raceways, or other electrical work. Repair damage to buildings, piping, and equipment using skilled craftsmen of trades involved.

3.1.13.2 Continuation of Service

Maintain continuity of existing circuits of equipment to remain. Maintain existing circuits of equipment energized. Restore circuits wiring and power which are to remain but were disturbed during demolition back to original condition.

3.2 FIELD FABRICATED NAMEPLATE MOUNTING

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets. Provide nameplate on all equipment in access controlled spaces and areas.

3.3 WARNING SIGN MOUNTING

Provide the number of signs required to be readable from each accessible side. Space the signs in accordance with NFPA 70E.

3.4 FIELD APPLIED PAINTING

Paint electrical equipment as required to match finish of adjacent surfaces or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria. Where

field painting of enclosures for panelboards, load centers or the like is specified to match adjacent surfaces, to correct damage to the manufacturer's factory applied coatings, or to meet the indicated or specified safety criteria, provide manufacturer's recommended coatings and apply in accordance to manufacturer's instructions.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Furnish test equipment and personnel and submit written copies of test results. Give Contracting Officer 5 working days notice prior to each test. Where applicable, test electrical equipment in accordance with NETA ATS.

3.5.1 Devices Subject to Manual Operation

Operate each device subject to manual operation at least five times, demonstrating satisfactory operation each time.

3.5.2 600-Volt Wiring Test

Test wiring rated 600 volt and less to verify that no short circuits or accidental grounds exist. Perform insulation resistance tests on wiring No. 6 AWG and larger diameter using instrument which applies voltage of 1,000 volts DC for 600 volt rated wiring and 500 volts DC for 300 volt rated wiring per NETA ATS to provide direct reading of resistance. All existing wiring to be reused must also be tested.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

SECTION 26 28 00.00 10

MOTOR CONTROL CENTERS, SWITCHBOARDS AND PANELBOARDS

08/22

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 26 28 00.00 10

MOTOR CONTROL CENTERS, SWITCHBOARDS AND PANELBOARDS
08/22

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

These specifications include the design, fabrication, assembly, wiring, testing, and delivery of the items of equipment and accessories and spare parts listed in the Schedule and shown on the drawings.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B1.1	(2024) Unified Inch Screw Threads (UN, UNR, and UNJ Thread Form)
ASME B1.20.1	(2013; R 2018) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A780/A780M	(2020) Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 81	(2012) Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System
IEEE C2	(2023) National Electrical Safety Code

INTERNATIONAL ELECTRICAL TESTING ASSOCIATION (NETA)

NETA ATS	(2021) Standard for Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment and Systems

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA ICS 1	(2022) Standard for Industrial Control and Systems: General Requirements
NEMA ICS 2	(2000; R 2020) Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V
NEMA ICS 4	(2015) Application Guideline for Terminal

	Blocks
NEMA ICS 6	(1993; R 2016) Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2023) National Electrical Code

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE (DOD)

DOD 8510.01	(2022) Risk Management Framework (RMF) for DoD Systems
DODI 8500.01	(2014) Cybersecurity

UL SOLUTIONS (UL)

UL 44	(2018; Reprint May 2021) UL Standard for Safety Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables
UL 489	(2016; Rev 2019) UL Standard for Safety Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures
UL 845	(2021) UL Standard for Safety Motor Control Centers
UL 1063	(2017; Reprint Jun 2022) UL Standard for Safety Machine-Tool Wires and Cables

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Drawings; G

Shop Drawings; G

Motor Control Centers; G

SD-03 Product Data

Equipment; G

Factory Tests

Request For Settings

SD-06 Test Reports

Factory Tests

Acceptance Checks And Tests; G

SD-07 Certificates

Motor Control Centers

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

Submit copies of such descriptive cuts and information as are required to demonstrate fully that all parts of the equipment will conform to the requirements and intent of the specifications, within 30 calendar days after date of receipt of notice to proceed for approval. Include descriptive data showing typical construction of the types of equipment proposed, including the manufacturer's name, type of molded case circuit breakers or motor circuit protectors, performance capacities and other information pertaining to the equipment. Ship the equipment as completely assembled and wired as feasible so as to require a minimum of installation work. Carefully pack and ship separately any relay or other device which cannot withstand the hazards of shipment when mounted in place on the equipment. Mark these devices with the number of the panel which they are to be mounted on and fully identified. Wrap all finished painted surfaces and metal work or otherwise protect from damage during shipment. Prepare all parts for shipment so that slings for handling may be attached readily while the parts are in a railway car or transport truck. Carefully package and clearly mark all spare parts and accessories.

1.5 MAINTENANCE

1.5.1 Accessories and Tools

Furnish a complete set of accessories and special tools unique to equipment provided and required for erecting, handling, dismantling, testing and maintaining the apparatus.

1.5.2 Extra Materials

Furnish spare parts as specified below. All spare parts must be of the same material and workmanship, must meet the same requirements, and must be interchangeable with the corresponding original parts furnished.

SPARE PARTS	
Amount	Description
2 of each type and size	Fuses
1	Circuit breaker auxiliary switch
2 for each type	Indicating lamp assemblies
4	Keys for motor control center door loc

SPARE PARTS	
Amount	Description
1 for each type and rating	Circuit Breaker

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

Provide materials and equipment which are standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in their manufacture and that essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening and that conform to the requirements of these specifications. Provide high quality materials, free from defects and imperfections, of recent manufacture, and of the classification and grades designated. All materials, supplies, and articles not manufactured by the Contractor must be the products of other recognized reputable manufacturers.

2.1.1 Rules

Provide equipment conforming to the requirements of NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are indicated herein or shown. NEMA rated and UL listed equipment has been specified when available. Provide equipment meeting NEMA and UL construction and rating requirements as specified. No equivalent will be acceptable. Immediately notify the Contracting Officer of any requirements of the specifications or Contractor proposed materials or assemblies that do not comply with UL or NEMA. International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) rated equipment will not be considered an acceptable alternative to specified NEMA ratings.

2.1.2 Coordination

The general arrangement of the motor control centers, switchboards and panelboards is shown on the contract drawings. Any modifications of the equipment arrangement or device requirements as indicated will be subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer. If any conflicts occur necessitating departures from the drawings, submit details of and reasons for departures for approval prior to implementing any change.

2.2 NAMEPLATES

Provide nameplates made of laminated sheet plastic or of anodized aluminum approximately 1/8 inch thick, engraved to provide white letters on a black background. Fasten the nameplates to the panels in proper positions with anodized round-head screws. Lettering must be minimum 1/2 inch high. Provide nameplate designations in accordance with lists on the drawings, and as a minimum provide nameplates for the following equipment:

a. Motor Control Centers

b. Individual items of equipment mounted in the Motor Control Centers

c. Switchboards

Provide equipment of the withdrawal type with nameplates mounted on the removable equipment in locations visible when the equipment is in place.

2.3 CONNECTIONS

Furnish all bolts, studs, machine screws, nuts, and tapped holes in accordance with ASME B1.1. Provide sizes and threads of all conduit and fittings, tubing and fittings, and connecting equipment in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. Provide ferrous fasteners that have rust-resistant finish and equip all bolts and screws with approved locking devices. Manufacturer's standard threads and construction may be used on small items which, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, are integrally replaceable, except that threads for external connections to these items must meet the above requirements.

2.4 MOLDED CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

Provide molded case circuit breakers conforming to the applicable requirements of UL 489. Provide circuit breakers that are manually-operated, that are the quick-make, quick-break, common trip type, and that are of the automatic-trip type unless otherwise specified or indicated on the drawings. Operate all poles of each breaker simultaneously by means of a common handle. Provide operating handles that clearly indicate whether the breakers are in "On," "Off," or "Tripped" position and have provisions for padlocking in the "Off" position. Provide personnel safety line terminal shields for each breaker. Furnish circuit breakers that are products of only one manufacturer, and are interchangeable when of the same frame size.

2.4.1 Trip Units

Except as otherwise noted, provide combination thermal and instantaneous magnetic or solid state trip units for the circuit breakers, of frame sizes and the trip unit ratings as shown on the drawings. The Government reserves the right to change the indicated trip ratings, within frame limits, of the trip devices at the time the shop drawings are submitted for approval. Submit copies of outline drawings of all equipment to be furnished under this contract, together with weights and overall dimensions, within 30 calendar days after date of receipt of notice to proceed, for the approval of the Contracting Officer. Set nonadjustable instantaneous magnetic trip units at approximately 10 times the continuous current ratings of the circuit breakers.

2.4.2 480-Volt AC Circuits

Furnish circuit breakers for 480-volt or 277/480-volt ac circuits that are rated 600 volts ac, andthat have an UL listed minimum interrupting capacity of 14,000 symmetrical amperes at 600 volts ac.

2.4.3 120/240-Volt AC Circuits

Circuit breakers for 120-volt ac circuits rated less than 120/240 or 240 volts ac are not permitted, and must have a UL listed minimum interrupting capacity of 10,000 symmetrical amperes.

2.5 WIRING

Provide control wire consisting of stranded tinned copper switchboard wire with 600-volt flame-retardant insulation Type SIS meeting UL 44 or Type

MTW meeting UL 1063, and passing the VW-1 flame tests included in those standards. Provide hinge wire consisting of Class K stranding. The minimum size of control wire is be No. 14 AWG. Furnish power wiring for 480-volt circuits and below that is the same type as control wiring and a minimum size of No. 12 AWG. Give special attention to wiring and terminal arrangement on the terminal blocks to permit the individual conductors of each external cable to be terminated on adjacent terminal points.

2.6 CONTROL SWITCHES

2.6.1 General

All control switches must be of the rotary switchboard type with handles on the front and the operating contact mechanisms on the rear of the panels. Provide each switch with ample contact stages to perform the functions of the control system and provide with at least two spare contacts. Provide self-aligning contacts that operate with a wiping action. Provide a positive means of maintaining high pressure on closed contacts. Compression springs or pivotal joints must not carry current. All control switches must be suitable for operation on 600-volt AC or 250-volt DC circuits. All such switches must be capable of satisfactorily withstanding a life test of at least 10,000 operations with rated current flowing in the switch contacts. Provide switches capable of continuously carrying 20 amperes without exceeding a temperature rise of 30 degrees C. The single-break inductive load interrupting rating of switches must not be less than 1.5 amperes for 125 volts DC or 10 amperes for 115 volts AC.

2.6.2 Switch Features

a. Provide control and instrument switches that are suitable for the intended use and that have the features shown on the schematic diagrams and switch development drawings. Provide switches that have handles as shown or approved and are black in color unless otherwise specified.

b. Control switches for electrically-operated circuit breakers must be 3-position momentary-contact type with spring return to neutral position, and must have modern-black, heavy duty pistol grip handles. Provide circuit breaker control switches that have mechanical operation indicators to show the last manual operation of the switches and slip contacts.

c. Provide each control switch with an escutcheon clearly marked to show each operating position. Engrave the switch identifications on the escutcheon plates or on separate nameplates. The escutcheon and nameplate markings are subject to approval.

2.7 TERMINAL BLOCKS

Furnish control circuit terminal blocks for control wiring that are molded or fabricated type with barriers, rated not less than 600 volts. Provide terminals that are removable binding, fillister or washer head screw type, or of the stud type with contact and locking nuts. The terminals must be no less than No. 10 in size and have sufficient length and space for connecting at least two indented terminals for 10 AWG conductors to each terminal. The terminal arrangement is subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer and provide no less than four (4) spare terminals or 10 percent, whichever is greater, on each block or group of blocks. Modular, pull apart, terminal blocks will be acceptable provided they are

of the channel or rail-mounted type. Submit data showing that the proposed alternate will accommodate the specified number of wires, are of adequate current-carrying capacity, and are constructed to assure positive contact between current-carrying parts.

2.7.1 Types of Terminal Blocks

2.7.1.1 Load Type

Provide load terminal blocks rated no less than 600 volts and of adequate capacity for the conductors for NEMA Size 3 and smaller motor controllers and for other power circuits except those for feeder tap units. Provide terminals that are either the stud type with contact nuts and locking nuts or the removable screw type, having length and space for at least two indented terminals of the size required on the conductors to be terminated. For conductors rated more than 50 amperes, provide screws with hexagonal heads. Conducting parts between connected terminals must have adequate contact surface and cross-section to operate without overheating. Place the circuit designation or wire number on or near the terminal in permanent contrasting color for each connected terminal.

2.7.2 Marking Strips

Provide white or other light-colored plastic marking strips, fastened by screws to each terminal block, for wire designations. Make wire numbers with permanent ink. Use reversible marking strips to permit marking both sides, or furnish two marking strips with each block. Marking strips must accommodate the two sets of wire numbers. For each device to which a connection is made, assign a device designation in accordance with NEMA ICS 1 and mark each device terminal to which a connection is made with a distinct terminal marking corresponding to the wire designation used on the Contractor's schematic and connection diagrams. The wire (terminal point) designations used on the Contractor's wiring diagrams and printed on terminal block marking strips may be according to the Contractor's standard practice; however, provide additional wire and cable designations for identification of remote (external) circuits for the Government's wire designations. Show the general arrangement and overall dimensions of the motor control centers, switchboards, and panelboards. Show space requirements, details of any floor supports to be embedded in concrete and provisions for conduits for external cables. Prints of drawings submitted for approval will be so marked and returned to the Contractor for addition of the designations to the terminal strips and tracings, along with any rearrangement of points required.

2.8 MOTOR CONTROL CENTERS

Design each motor control center for operation on 480-volts ac, 3-phase, 60-Hz system, and equipment conforming to all the applicable requirements of NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, NEMA ICS 4and NEMA ICS 6. List and label vertical sections and individual units under UL 845 where ever possible. In lieu of the UL listing, certification from any nationally recognized, adequately equipped, testing agency that the individual units and vertical sections have been tested and conform to the UL requirements of that agency will be acceptable when approved by the Contracting Officer.

a. Submit copies of electrical equipment drawings, within 30 calendar days after date of receipt of notice to proceed, for the approval of the Contracting Officer.

b. Submit an individual wiring diagram for each motor control center. Wiring diagrams must be in a form showing physical arrangement of the control center with interconnecting wiring shown by lines or by terminal designations. Provide a single-line diagram, equipment list and nameplate schedule for each switchboard and panelboard.

2.8.1 Combination Starters

[2.8.1.1 Auxiliary Contacts

Provide each controller with a minimum of three auxiliary contacts which can be easily changed from normally open to normally closed. Where indicated on the drawings, provide a fourth auxiliary contact and red and green indicating lights.

2.8.1.2 Overload Relays

Except as otherwise indicated, provide three NEMA Class 20 thermal or solid state overload relays with external manual reset for each controller. Prior to shipment of the control centers, the Contracting Officer will furnish the ratings of the heater elements to be installed in the relays by the Contractor.

2.8.2 Wiring for Motor Control Centers

All wiring must meet the requirements of paragraph WIRING above. Provide heavy-duty clamp type terminals for terminating all power cables entering the control centers.

2.8.2.1 Contractor's Wiring

Form Contractor's wiring into groups, suitably bound together, properly support and run straight horizontally or vertically. There must be no splices in the wiring. The manufacturer's standard pressure-type wire terminations for connections to internal devices will be acceptable. Add terminal blocks for wiring to devices having leads instead of terminals. Use ring tongue indented terminals on all wires terminated on control terminal blocks for external or interpanel connections and at shipping splits. Provide contact nuts and either locking nuts or lockwashers for all stud terminals.

2.8.2.2 External Connections

Power and control cables will enter the control centers at the where shown on the drawings.

2.8.2.3 Terminal Blocks

Furnish terminal blocks meeting the requirements of paragraph TERMINAL BLOCKS above. In no case must the terminals provided for circuit breakers or contactors accommodate less than the number or size of conductors shown on the drawings. Give special attention to wiring and terminal arrangement on the terminal blocks to permit the individual conductors of each external cable to be terminated on adjacent terminal points.

2.8.3 Accessories and Control Devices

Provide control accessories that are suitable for mounting on the front of, or inside, the control centers as indicated on the drawings. Provide

control accessories meeting the applicable requirements of NEMA ICS 2. Mount relays and other equipment so that mechanical vibration will not cause false operation.

2.8.3.1 Control Stations

Provide push-button stations and selector switches in conformance to NEMA ICS 2, of the heavy-duty, oil-tight type, rated 600 volts ac, and with a contact rating designation of A600. Provide switches with escutcheon plates clearly marked to show operating positions.

2.8.3.2 LED Indicating Lights

Furnish red and green LED's where shown on the drawings, indicating contact "open" and "closed" position. Make LED's accessible and replaceable from the front of the control center through a finished opening in the compartment door. Provide LED assemblies that are the heavy duty oiltight, watertight, and dusttight type.

2.8.3.3 Control Relays

Provide control relays that are electrically operated, magnetically held, self-reset, open type, suitable for mounting inside the starter compartments, and are 120-volt ac. Provide contacts as indicated on the drawings and have a contact rating designation of A600 or N600, as required, in accordance with NEMA ICS 2.

2.8.4 Metering Section

2.8.4.1 Switches

Furnish rotary switchboard type metering switches with handles on the front and operating contact mechanisms on the rear of the panels. Provide control switches suitable for operation on 600-volt AC or 250-volt DC circuits. Provide switches that are capable of satisfactorily withstanding a life test of at least 10,000 operations with rated current flowing in the switch contacts. Provide maintained-contact type selector switches with the required number of positions, and that have round notched, or knurled handles. Ammeter switches must not open the secondary circuits of current transformers at any time. Provide instrument switches for potential selection with oval handles.

2.9 FACTORY TESTS

Each item of equipment supplied under this contract must be given the manufacturer's routine factory tests and tests as specified below, to insure successful operation of all parts of the assemblies. The Contracting Officer will witness all tests required herein unless waived in writing, and no equipment will be shipped until it has been approved for shipment by the Contracting Officer.

a. Submit copies of manufacturer's routine factory test procedures and production line tests for all motor control centers, within a minimum of 14 days prior to the proposed date of tests. Notify the Contracting Officer a minimum of 14 days prior to the proposed date of the tests so that arrangements can be made for the Contracting Officer to be present at the tests.

b. Use factory test equipment and the test methods conforming to the

applicable NEMA Standards, and are subject to the approval of the Contracting Officer. Submit complete reproducible copies of the factory inspection results and complete reproducible copies of the factory test results in booklet form, including all plotted data curves, all test conditions, a listing of test equipment complete with calibration certifications, and all measurements taken.

c. Report must be signed and dated by the Contractor's and Contracting Officer's Representatives. Reports of all witnessed tests must be signed by witnessing representatives of the Contractor and Contracting Officer. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of performing all tests and include in the prices bid in the schedule for equipment.

2.9.1 Motor Control Centers Tests

2.9.1.1 Dielectric Tests

For the existing motor control center, perform dielectric tests in accordance with NEMA ICS 1.

2.9.1.2 Operational Tests

Check the correctness of operation of each air circuit breaker and magnetic contactor and of all control devices, accessories and indicating lamps. Make these checks rated voltage with power supplies to the main buses. Also check all magnetic contactors for proper operation with power at 90 percent of rated voltage.

2.10 PAINTING

Clean interior and exterior steel surfaces of equipment enclosures thoroughly and then apply a rust-inhibitive phosphatizing or equivalent treatment prior to painting. Exterior surfaces must be free from holes, seams, dents, weld marks, loose scale or other imperfections. Apply no less than one coat of corrosion-resisting paint in accordance with the manufacturer's standard practice to exterior surfaces. Prime exterior, filled where necessary, and give no less than two coats baked enamel with semigloss finish. Equipment located indoors must be ANSI Light Gray, and equipment located outdoors must be ANSI Light Grey. Perform all touch-up work with manufacturer's coatings as supplied under paragraph SPARE PARTS.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

Conform to IEEE C2, NFPA 70, and to the requirements specified herein. Provide new equipment and materials unless indicated or specified otherwise.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT AND ASSEMBLIES

Install and connect equipment furnished under this section as indicated on project drawings, the approved shop drawings, and as specified herein.

3.2.1 Motor Control Centers

NEMA ICS 1.

NEMA ICS 2.

3.2.2 Field Applied Painting

Where field painting of enclosures is required to correct damage to the manufacturer's factory applied coatings, provide manufacturer's recommended coatings and apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.2.3 Galvanizing Repair

Repair damage to galvanized coatings using ASTM A780/A780M, zinc rich paint, for galvanizing damaged by handling, transporting, cutting, welding, or bolting. Do not heat surfaces that repair paint has been applied to.

3.2.4 Field Fabricated Nameplate Mounting

Provide number, location, and letter designation of nameplates as indicated. Fasten nameplates to the device with a minimum of two sheet-metal screws or two rivets.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Submit request for settings of breakers to the Contracting Officer after approval of Motor Control Center and at least 30 days in advance of their requirement.

3.3.1 Performance of Acceptance Checks and Tests

Perform in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and Section 26 08 00 APPARATUS INSPECTION AND TESTING.

3.3.1.1 Motor Control Center

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

1. Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.

2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required area clearances.

3. Verify the unit is clean and all shipping bracing, loose parts, and documentation shipped inside cubicles have been removed.

4. Verify that fuse and circuit breaker sizes and types correspond to drawings and coordination study as well as to the circuit breaker address for microprocessor-communication packages.

5. Verify that wiring connections are tight and that wiring is secure to prevent damage during routine operation of moving parts.

6. Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.

7. Confirm correct operation and sequencing of electrical and mechanical interlock systems.

8. Confirm correct application of manufacturer's recommended lubricants.

9. Inspect insulators for evidence of physical damage or contaminated surfaces.

10. Exercise all active components.

11. Inspect all mechanical indicating devices for correct operation.

12. Verify that filters are in place and vents are clear.

b. Electrical Tests

1. Perform insulation-resistance tests on each bus section.

2. Perform dielectric withstand voltage tests.

3. Perform insulation-resistance test on control wiring; Do not perform this test on wiring connected to solid-state components.

4. Perform control wiring performance test.

5. Perform phasing check on double-ended motor control center to ensure correct bus phasing from each source.5

6. Verify operation of motor control center heaters.

3.3.1.2 Circuit Breakers - Low Voltage - Power

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

1. Compare nameplate data with specifications and approved shop drawings.

2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

3. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.

4. Verify that all maintenance devices are available for servicing and operating the breaker.

5. Inspect arc chutes.

6. Inspect moving and stationary contacts for condition, wear, and alignment.

7. Verify that primary and secondary contact wipe and other dimensions vital to satisfactory operation of the breaker are correct.

8. Perform all mechanical operator and contact alignment tests on both the breaker and its operating mechanism.

9. Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.

10. Verify cell fit and element alignment.

11. Verify racking mechanism.

12. Confirm correct application of manufacturer's recommended lubricants.

b. Electrical Tests

1. Perform contact-resistance tests on each breaker.

2. Perform insulation-resistance tests.

3. Adjust Breaker(s) for final settings in accordance with Government provided settings.

3.3.1.3 Grounding System

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

1. Inspect ground system for compliance with contract plans and specifications.

b. Electrical Tests

1. IEEE 81. Perform ground-impedance measurements utilizing the fall-of-potential method. On systems consisting of interconnected ground rods, perform tests after interconnections are complete. On systems consisting of a single ground rod perform tests before any wire is connected. Take measurements in normally dry weather, not less than 48 hours after rainfall. Use a portable ground resistance tester in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to test each ground or group of grounds. Use an instrument equipped with a meter reading directly in ohms or fractions thereof to indicate the ground value of the ground rod or grounding systems under test.

2. Submit the measured ground resistance of each ground rod and grounding system, indicating the location of the rod and grounding system. Include the test method and test setup (i.e., pin location) used to determine ground resistance and soil conditions at the time the measurements were made.

3.3.1.4 Switches, Air, Low-Voltage

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

1. Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.

2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

3. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.

4. Verify the unit is clean.

5. Verify correct blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.

6. Verify that fuse sizes and types are in accordance with drawings, short-circuit studies, and coordination study.

7. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.

8. Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.

9. Verify operation and sequencing of interlocking systems.

10. Verify correct phase barrier installation.

11. Verify correct operation of all indicating and control devices.

12. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.

b. Electrical Tests

1. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter, in accordance with Section 7.5.1.1.A.8.1 of NETA ATS.

2. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade and fuseholder.

3. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer’s published data. In the absence of manufacturer’s data, use Table 100.1 of NETA ATS.

4. Measure fuse resistance.

5. Verify cubicle space heater operation.

6. Perform ground fault test in accordance with Section 7.14 of NETA ATS.

7. Perform tests on other protective devices in accordance with Section 7.9 of NETA ATS.

3.3.1.5 Circuit Breakers

3.3.1.5.1 Circuit Breakers, Air, Insulated-Case/Molded-Case

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

1. Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.

2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

3. Inspect anchorage and alignment.

4. Verify the unit is clean.

5. Operate the circuit breaker to insure smooth operation.

6. Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance

using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.

7. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and arc chutes in unsealed nits.

8. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.

b. Electrical Tests

1. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter in accordance with Section 7.6.1.1.A.6.1 of NETA ATS.

2. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with the circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's data, use Table 100.1 of NETA ATS.

3. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test.

4. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential will be 500 volts dc for 300-volt rated cable and 1000 volts dc for 600-volt rated cable. Test duration will be one minute. For units with solid-state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation.

5. Determine long-time pickup and delay by primary current injection.

6. Determine short-time pickup and delay by primary current injection.

7. Determine ground-fault pickup and time delay by primary current injection.

8. Determine instantaneous pickup by primary current injection.

9. Test functions of the trip unit by means of secondary injection.

10. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance withmanufacturer's published data.

11. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators, zone interlocking, electrical close and trip operation, trip-free, anti-pump function, and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators.

12. Verify operation of charging mechanism.

3.3.1.5.2 Circuit Breakers, Low-Voltage Power

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

1. Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.

2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

3. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.

4. Verify that all maintenance devices are available for servicing and operating the breaker.

5. Verify the unit is clean.

6. Verify the arc chutes are intact.

7. Inspect moving and stationary contacts for condition and alignment.

8. Verify that primary and secondary contact wipe and other dimensions vital to satisfactory operation of the breaker are correct.

9. Perform all mechanical operator and contact alignment tests on both the breaker and its operating mechanism in accordance with manufacturer’s published data.

10. Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey

11. Verify cell fit and element alignment.

12. Verify racking mechanism operation.

13. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.

14. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with coordination study provided by end user.

15. Record as-found and as-left operation counter readings.

b. Electrical Tests

1. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter in accordance with Section 7.6.1.2.A.10.1 of NETA ATS.

2. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with the circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Test voltage will be in accordance with manufacturer’s published data. In the absence of manufacturer’s data, use Table 100.1 of NETA ATS.

3. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test.

4. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential will be 500 volts dc for 300-volt rated cable and 1000 volts dc for 600-volt rated cable. Test duration will be one minute. For units with solid-state components, follow manufacturer’s recommendation.

5. Determine long-time pickup and delay by primary current injection.

6. Determine short-time pickup and delay by primary current injection.

7. Determine ground-fault pickup and delay by primary current injection.

8. Determine instantaneous pickup value by primary current injection.

9. Test functions of the trip unit by means of secondary injection.

10. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's data, use Table 100.20 of NETA ATS.

11. Verify correct operation of any auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators, zone interlocking, electrical close and trip operation, trip-free, antipump function, and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators.

12. Verify operation of charging mechanism.

3.3.1.6 Motor Control, Motor Starters, Low-Voltage

a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection

1. Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.

2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

3. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.

4. Verify the unit is clean.

5. Inspect contactors.

(a) Verify mechanical operation.

(b) Verify contact gap, wipe, alignment, and pressure are in accordance with manufacturer's published data.

6. Motor-Running Protection

(a) Verify overload element rating/motor protection settings are correct for application.

(b) If motor-running protection is provided by fuses, verify correct fuse rating.

7. Inspect all bolted electrical connections for high resistance using low-resistance ohmmeter, verifying tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method, or performing thermographic survey.

8. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.

b. Electrical Tests

1. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter in accordance with Section 7.16.1.1.A.7.1 from NETA ATS.

2. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with starter closed, and across each open pole. Test voltage will be in accordance with manufacturer's published data or Table 100.1 from NETA ATS.

3. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential will be 500 volts dc for 300-volt rated cable and 1000 volts dc for 600-volt rated cable. Test duration will be one minute. For units with solid-state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation.

4. Test motor protection devices in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's data, use Section 7.9 from NETA ATS.

5. Test circuit breakers in accordance with Section 7.6.1.1 from NETA ATS.

6. Perform operational al tests by initiating control devices.

3.3.1.7 Cybersecurity Installation Certification

Furnish a certification that control systems are installed in accordance with DODI 8500.01, DOD 8510.01, and as required by individual Service Implementation Policy.

3.3.2 Follow-Up Verification

Upon completion of acceptance checks, settings, and tests, show by demonstration in service that circuits and devices are in good operating condition and properly performing the intended function. Trip circuit breakers by operation of each protective device. Test each item to perform its function not less than three times. As an exception to requirements stated elsewhere in the contract, provide the Contracting Officer 5 working days advance notice of the dates and times for checks, settings, and tests.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK

SECTION 31 00 00

EARTHWORK

08/23

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 31 00 00

EARTHWORK
08/23

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF STATE HIGHWAY AND TRANSPORTATION OFFICIALS (AASHTO)

AASHTO T 180	(2017) Standard Method of Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54-kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457-mm (18-in.) Drop

AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA C600	(2023) Installation of Ductile-Iron Mains and Their Appurtenances

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C33/C33M	(2023) Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C117	(2023) Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75-um (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C136/C136M	(2019) Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM C150/C150M	(2024) Standard Specification for Portland Cement
ASTM C260/C260M	(2010a; R 2016) Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
ASTM C618	(2023; E 2023) Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete
ASTM C989/C989M	(2024) Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars
ASTM D698	(2012; E 2014; E 2015) Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/cu. ft. (600 kN-m/cu. m.))
ASTM D1140	(2017) Standard Test Methods for

	Determining the Amount of Material Finer than 75-µm (No. 200) Sieve in Soils by Washing
ASTM D1556/D1556M	(2015; E 2016) Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	(2012; E 2015) Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft3) (2700 kN-m/m3)
ASTM D2167	(2015) Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method
ASTM D2216	(2019) Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass
ASTM D2321	(2020) Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications
ASTM D2487	(2017; E 2020) Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D2974	(2020; E 2020) Moisture, Ash, and Organic Matter of Peat and Other Organic Soils
ASTM D4253	(2016; E 2019) Standard Test Methods for Maximum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils Using a Vibratory Table
ASTM D4254	(2016) Standard Test Methods for Minimum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils and Calculation of Relative Density
ASTM D4318	(2017; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4355/D4355M	(2014) Deterioration of Geotextiles from Exposure to Light, Moisture and Heat in a Xenon-Arc Type Apparatus
ASTM D4491/D4491M	(2017) Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity
ASTM D4533	(2011) Trapezoid Tearing Strength of Geotextiles
ASTM D4595	(2017) Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Geotextiles by the Wide-Width Strip Method
ASTM D4751	(2020) Standard Test Method for

	Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile
ASTM D4832	(2016; E 2018) Standard Test Method for Preparation and Testing of Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM) Test Cylinders
ASTM D4833/D4833M	(2007; R 2020) Standard Test Method forIndex Puncture Resistance of Geomembranes and Related Products
ASTM D5268	(2019) Topsoil Used for Landscaping Purposes
ASTM D6023	(2016) Standard Test Method for Density (Unit Weight), Yield, Cement Content, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Controlled Low-Strength Material (CLSM)
ASTM D6103/D6103M	(2017; E 2021) Standard Test Method for Flow Consistency of Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM)
ASTM D6938	(2017a) Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
ASTM D8167/D8167M	(2023) Standard Test Method for In-Place Bulk Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by a Low-Activity Nuclear Method (Shallow Depth)

Oregon Department of Transportation, Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction

Section 00390	(2024) Riprap Protection

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2024) Safety -- Safety and Occupational Health (SOH) Requirements

1.2 DEFINITIONS

1.2.1 Structural Fill

Soil material placed to support buildings, walls, pads, and other similar facilities.

1.2.2 Embankment Fill

Soil material placed to construct embankment.

1.2.3 Porous Fill

Free-draining material placed for subsurface drainage, as a capillary break, or another specific purpose.

1.2.4 Topsoil

Surface layer of primarily organic soil capable of supporting vegetation growth.

1.2.5 Utility Bedding Material

Fill placed to directly support pipes, conduits, cables, and appurtenant structures. Bedding may also be used to provide a cushion between utilities and bedrock, obstacles, obstructions and other unyielding materials.

1.2.6 Flowable Fill

Fill placed in a plastic or liquid form that flows to near its final placement location with limited assistance and subsequently cures or solidifies to provide a stable or impermeable barrier.

1.2.7 Satisfactory Materials

Satisfactory materials for fill, backfill, and/or any in-situ soils to remain in place comprise any materials classified by ASTM D2487 as GW, GP, GM, GP-GM, GW-GM, GC, GP-GC, GM-GC, SW, SP, SM, SW-SM, SC, SW-SC, SP-SM, SP-SC, CL, ML, CL-ML. Maximum particle size to be no greater than one-half of the allowable lift thickness in any dimension.

1.2.8 Unsatisfactory Materials

Materials which do not comply with the requirements for satisfactory materials are unsatisfactory. Unsatisfactory materials also include man-made fills; trash; refuse; backfills from previous construction; roots and other organic matter or frozen material. Notify the Contracting Officer when encountering any contaminated materials.

1.2.9 Cohesionless Materials

Cohesionless materials include materials classified in ASTM D2487 as GW, GP, SW, and SP. Materials classified as GM and SM will be identified as cohesionless only when the fines are nonplastic. Perform testing, required for classifying materials, in accordance with ASTM D4318, ASTM C117, ASTM C136/C136M and ASTM D1140.

1.2.10 Cohesive Materials

Cohesive materials include materials classified as GC, SC, ML, CL, MH, and CH. Materials classified as GM and SM will be identified as cohesive only when the fines are plastic. Perform testing, required for classifying materials, in accordance with ASTM D4318, ASTM C117, ASTM C136/C136M and ASTM D1140.

1.2.11 Hard/Unyielding Materials

Hard/Unyielding materials comprise weathered rock, dense consolidated deposits, or conglomerate materials which are not included in the definition of "rock" with stones or as defined by the pipe manufacturer, whichever is smaller. These materials usually require the use of heavy excavation equipment, ripper teeth, or jack hammers for removal.

1.2.12 Unstable Material

Unstable materials are too weak to adequately support the utility pipe, conduit, equipment, or appurtenant structure. Satisfactory material may become unstable due to ineffective drainage, dewatering, becoming frozen, excessive loading.

1.2.13 Rock

Solid homogeneous interlocking crystalline material with firmly cemented, laminated, or foliated masses or conglomerate deposits, neither of which can be removed without systematic drilling and blasting, drilling and the use of expansion jacks or feather wedges, or the use of backhoe-mounted pneumatic hole punchers or rock breakers; also large boulders, buried masonry, or concrete other than pavement exceeding 1/2 cubic yard in volume. Removal of hard material will not be considered rock excavation because of intermittent drilling and blasting that is performed merely to increase production.

1.2.14 Capillary Water Barrier

A layer of clean, poorly graded crushed rock, stone, or natural sand or gravel having a high porosity which is placed beneath a building slab with or without a vapor barrier to cut off the capillary flow of pore water to the area immediately below a slab.

1.2.15 Degree of Compaction (Proctor)

Degree of compaction required, except as noted in the second sentence, is expressed as a percentage of the maximum density obtained by the test procedure presented in ASTM D1557abbreviated as a percent of laboratory maximum density. Since ASTM D1557 applies only to soils that have 30 percent or less by weight of their particles retained on the 3/4 inch sieve, express the degree of compaction for material having more than 30 percent by weight of their particles retained on the 3/4 inch sieve as a percentage of the maximum density in accordance with AASHTO T 180-21 paragraph 1.5, Note 1.

1.2.16 Degree of Compaction (Relative Density)

Degree of compaction required for soils with less than 5 percent passing the No. 200 sieve, is expressed as a relative percentage of the maximum index density/dry unit weight and minimum index density/dry unit weight, obtained by the test procedures in accordance with ASTM D4253 and ASTM D4254, respectively, abbreviated as a percent of laboratory relative density.

1.2.17 Borrow

Soil brought to the project site from an external location for the purposes of project construction.

1.2.18 Subgrade

Earth materials directly below foundations and directly below granular base materials in building slab and pavement areas including shoulders.

1.3 SUBSURFACE DATA

Subsurface soil boring logs are shown in the Geotechnical Baseline Report. These data represent available subsurface information; however, variations may exist between boring locations.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Excavation and Trenching Plan; G

Borrow Plan; G

Dewatering Work Plan; G

Jacking, Boring, and Tunneling Plan; G

Rock Excavation Plan; G

Disposition of Surplus Materials; G

Preconstruction Meeting; G

SD-03 Product Data

Fill Mix Design; G

Geotextiles

SD-04 Samples

Geotextiles

SD-06 Test Reports

Dewatering Performance Records; G

Material Test Report; G

1.5 QUALITY CONTROL

1.5.1 Qualified Technician

Provide a Qualified Technician to inspect, monitor, sample, and performing field testing. The technician qualifications need to be one of the following: a current National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) Level II minimum certification in Construction Materials Testing Soils; a Geologist-in-Training with minimum one-year experience; an Engineer-in-Training with minimum one-year experience; a Registered Geologist; or a Professional Engineer.

1.5.2 Lab Validation

Perform testing by a Corps validated commercial testing laboratory or Contractor established testing laboratory meeting the requirements of Section 01 45 00 (or similar number) entitled QUALITY CONTROL and approved by the Contracting Officer. Submit testing laboratory validation for the testing to be performed. Do not permit work requiring testing until testing facilities have been inspected, Corps validated and approved by the Contracting Officer.

1.5.3 Preconstruction Meeting

Conduct a preconstruction meeting at the jobsite at least five business days prior to the start of earthwork operations on the project. The preconstruction meeting is to be arranged by the Contractor and is to follow the written agenda submitted prior to the meeting. The purpose of this meeting is to review the requirements of this specification and the associated plans. The following individuals must be in attendance at this meeting: Contractor's Project Manager and Project Superintendent, earthwork subcontractor's Project Manager and Site Foreman, Contractor's Testing Agency, Government Geotechnical Engineer and Civil Engineer, and Government Construction Manager and Engineering Technician.

The minutes of this meeting are to be recorded by the Contractor and published via email within 48 hours to all attendees. The minutes must be re-published within 48 hours via email pending any subsequent comments from the attendees.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

2.1.1 Structural Fill

Materials classified as [GW], [GP],[GM], [GC], [GW-GM], [GW-GC], [GP-GM], [GP-GC], [GC-GM], [SW], [SP], [SM], [SW-SM], [SC], [SW-SC], [SP-SM], [SP-SC], [CL], or [CH] in accordance with ASTM D2487. Select material type appropriate for the intended purpose.

2.1.2 Embankment Fill

Materials in accordance with ASTM D2487. Select material type appropriate for the intended purpose.

Materials classified as [GW], [GP], [GM], [GC], [GW-GM], [GW-GC], [GP-GM], [GP-GC], [GC-GM], [SW], [SP], [SM], [SW-SM], [SC], [SW-SC], [SP-SM], [SP-SC], [CL], or [CH] in accordance with ASTM D2487. Select material type appropriate for the intended purpose.

2.1.3 Porous Fill

Materials containing less than 5 percent passing the No. 200 sieve. Provide the gradation as appropriate for the intended purpose.

2.1.4 Topsoil

Material suitable for topsoil obtained from offsite areas is defined as: Natural, friable soil representative of productive, well-drained soils in the area, free of subsoil, stumps, rocks larger than one inch diameter,

brush, weeds, toxic substances, and other material detrimental to plant growth. Topsoil material will be in accordance with ASTM D5268.

2.1.5 Capillary Water Barrier

Conform to ASTM C33/C33M for fine aggregate grading with a maximum of 3 percent by weight passing ASTM D1140, No. 200 sieve.

2.1.6 Utility Bedding Material

Except as specified otherwise in the individual piping section, provide bedding for buried piping in accordance with [AWWA C600] [ASTM D2321]. Install bedding for plastic piping to spring line of pipe. Utility bedding material may include the following:

2.1.6.1 Class I

Angular, 0.25 to 1.5 inch, graded stone, including a number of fill materials that have regional significance such as coral, slag, cinders, crushed stone, and crushed shells.

2.1.6.2 Class II

Coarse sands and gravels with maximum particle size of 1.5 inch, including various graded sands and gravels containing small percentages of fines, generally granular and noncohesive, either wet or dry. Soil Types GW, GP, SW, and SP are included in this class as specified in ASTM D2487.

2.1.6.3 Sand

Clean, coarse-grained sand classified as [_____], [gradation [_____] of the [DOT] [State Standard] or [SW] [or] [SP] by ASTM D2487 for [bedding] [and] [backfill] [as indicated]].

2.1.6.4 Gravel and Crushed Stone

Clean, coarsely graded natural gravel, crushed stone or a combination thereof identified as [_____], [gradation [_____] of the [DOT] [State Standard]] or having a classification of [GW] [GP] in accordance with ASTM D2487 for [bedding] [and] [backfill] [as indicated].[Do not exceed maximum particle size of [3] [_____] inches.]

2.2 FLOWABLE FILL

Design and submit fill mix design to consist of Portland cement, fly ash, and/or slag cement and fine aggregate. Include the dry weights of cementitious material(s); quality and gradation of aggregates in the saturated surface-dry weights along with gradation tests; quantities, types, and names of admixtures; and quantity of water per cubic yard. The [minimum] [maximum] unconfined compressive strength to be [_____] [psi] [psf] at [_____] days in accordance with ASTM D4832. The aggregates in accordance with ASTM C33/C33M Fine Aggregates. Air-entrain fill in accordance with ASTM C260/C260M. The air content to be between [8 and 15 percent] in accordance with ASTM D6023. The flow to be between [8 and 12 inches] [_____] in accordance with ASTM D6103/D6103M. Portland cement to be Type I or II in accordance with ASTM C150/C150M. Fly ash to be Class C in accordance with ASTM C618. Provide slag cement in Grade 100 or 120 in accordance with ASTM C989/C989M.

2.3 BURIED WARNING AND IDENTIFICATION MARKERS

Provide warning tape manufactured specifically for warning and identification of buried utility lines. Provide tape on rolls, 3 inches minimum width, color coded as specified below for the intended utility with warning and identification imprinted in bold black letters continuously over the entire tape length. Warning and identification to read, "CAUTION, BURIED (intended service) LINE BELOW" or similar wording. Provide permanent color and printing, unaffected by moisture or soil.

Warning Tape Color Codes	
Red	Electric
Yellow	Gas, Oil; Dangerous Materials
Orange	Telephone and Other Communications
Blue	Water Systems
Green	Sewer Systems
White	Steam Systems
Gray	Compressed Air

2.3.1 Warning Tape for Metallic Piping

Provide acid and alkali-resistant polyethylene plastic tape conforming to the width, color, and printing requirements specified above, with a minimum thickness of 0.003 inch and a minimum strength of 1500 psi lengthwise, and 1250 psi crosswise, with a maximum 350 percent elongation.

2.3.2 Detectable Warning Tape for Non-Metallic Piping

Provide polyethylene plastic tape conforming to the width, color, and printing requirements specified above, with a minimum thickness of 0.004 inch, and a minimum strength of 1500 psi lengthwise and 1250 psi crosswise. Manufacture tape with integral wires, foil backing, or other means of enabling detection by a metal detector when tape is buried up to 3 feet deep. Encase metallic element of the tape in a protective jacket or provide with other means of corrosion protection.

2.3.3 Detection Wire for Non-Metallic Piping

Insulate a single strand, solid copper detection wire with a minimum of 12 AWG.

2.4 MATERIAL FOR RIP-RAP

Provide filter fabric and rock conforming to ODOT Standard Specification Section 00390 - Riprap Protection for construction indicated.

2.4.1 Bedding Material

Provide bedding material consisting of sand, gravel, or crushed rock, well graded, with a maximum particle size of 2 inches. Compose material of

tough, durable particles. Allow fines passing the No. 200 standard sieve with a plasticity index less than 6.

2.4.2 Grout

Provide durable grout composed of cement, water, an air-entraining admixture, and sand mixed in proportions of one-part Portland cement to two parts of sand, sufficient water to produce a workable mixture, and an amount of admixture which will entrain sufficient air, as determined by the Contracting Officer. Mix grout in a concrete mixer. Allow a sufficient mixing time to produce a mixture having a consistency permitting gravity flow into the interstices of the riprap with limited spading and brooming.

2.4.3 Rock

Provide rock fragments which ensure permanence in the structure and the environment in which it is to be used. Use rock fragments free from cracks, seams, and other defects that would increase the risk of deterioration from natural causes. Provide fragments sized such that no individual fragment exceeds a weight of 150 pounds and that no more than 10 percent of the mixture, by weight, consists of fragments weighing 2 pounds or less each. Provide rock with a minimum specific gravity of 2.50. Do not permit the inclusion of more than trace 1 percent quantities of dirt, sand, clay and rock fines.

2.5 BORROW

Provide borrow materials from sources located outside of Government property meeting the requirements of paragraph STRUCTURAL FILL and TOPSOIL.

2.6 GEOTEXTILE

Provide a pervious sheet of polyester, nylon, glass or polypropylene ultraviolet resistant filaments woven, spun bonded, fused, or otherwise manufactured into a non-raveling fabric with uniform thickness and strength. Fabric must have manufacturer certified minimum average roll properties that conform with ASTM D4751, ASTM D4491/D4491M, ASTM D4595, ASTM D4533, ASTM D4833/D4833M, ASTM D4355/D4355M. Submit a sample and material product data for all Geotextiles utilized.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

Perform all work specified in accordance with applicable requirements of the Corps of Engineers publication EM 385-1-1 Safety and Health Requirements Manual.

Use equipment of type and size appropriate for the site conditions (soil character and moisture content). Maintenance of exposed subgrades and fills is the responsibility of the Contractor. The Contractor is required to prevent damage by ineffective drainage, dewatering, and heavy loads and equipment by implementing precautionary measures. Repair or replace any defects or damage.

3.1.1 Underground Utilities

Location of the existing utilities indicated is approximate. Physically

verify the location and elevation of the existing utilities indicated prior to starting construction. The Contractor is responsible for protecting utilities from damage during construction.

3.1.2 Drainage and Dewatering

Provide for the collection and disposal of surface and subsurface water encountered during construction.

3.1.2.1 Drainage

Provide for the collection and disposal of surface and subsurface water encountered during construction. Construct storm drainage features (ponds/basins) at the earliest stages of site development, and throughout construction grade the construction area to provide positive surface water runoff away from the construction activity or provide temporary ditches, swales, and other drainage features and equipment as required to keep soils from becoming unstable, prevent erosion, or undermining of foundations. Remove unstable material from working platforms for equipment operation and soil support for subsequent construction features and provide new material as specified herein. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to assess the site conditions to employ necessary measures to permit construction to proceed.

3.1.2.2 Dewatering

Control groundwater flowing toward or into excavations to prevent sloughing of excavation slopes and walls, boils, uplift and heave in the excavation and to eliminate interference with orderly progress of construction. French drains, sumps, ditches or trenches are not allowed within 3 feet of the foundation of any structure, except with specific written approval, and after specific contractual provisions for restoration of the foundation area have been made. Perform control measures by the time the excavation reaches the water level in order to maintain the integrity of the in-situ material. While the excavation is open, maintain the water level continuously, at least 1 foot below the working level. Submit a Dewatering Work Plan outlining procedures for accomplishing dewatering work. Operate dewatering system continuously until construction work below existing water levels is complete. Measure and record performance of dewatering system at same time each day by use of observation wells or piezometers installed in conjunction with the dewatering system. Submit dewatering performance records weekly.

3.1.3 Shoring and Sheeting

Submit an Excavation and Trenching Plan to stabilize features, prevent undermining or unintended horizontal and vertical movement of adjacent structures, and prevent slippage or movement in banks or slopes adjacent to the excavation. Submit drawings and calculations, certified by a registered professional engineer, describing the methods for shoring and sheeting of excavations. Drawings to include material sizes and types, arrangement of members, and the sequence and method of installation and removal. Calculations are to include data and references used.

3.1.4 Protection of Graded Surfaces

Protect newly backfilled, graded, and topsoiled areas from traffic, erosion, and settlements that may occur. Repair or reestablish damaged grades, elevations, or slopes.

3.2 BORROW

Select borrow material to meet the requirements and conditions of the fill or embankment for which it is to be used. Obtain borrow material from an off site location. Submit a Borrow Plan that includes materials to be excavated, stockpile locations, proposed slopes, drainage, and closure. Unless otherwise provided in the contract, the Contractor is responsible for obtaining the right to procure material, pay royalties and other charges involved, and bear the expense of developing the sources, including rights-of-way for hauling from the owners. Unless specifically provided, do not obtain borrow within the limits of the project site without prior written approval.

3.2.1 Government Furnished Borrow Area(s)

Obtain approved borrow materials from [_____]. The rights-of-way and earth materials for constructing the work have been furnished, without cost, to the Contractor. Submit a Borrow Plan to the Government of intention to use the specified Government-furnished borrow areas.

3.2.1.1 Stripping and Stockpiling Operations in Borrow Area

Strip in accordance with paragraph STRIPPING. Strip at least 5 feet beyond the limits of the borrow excavation and any stockpiles of fill and embankment materials.

Stockpile materials within the borrow area work limits such that the stockpiles does not interfere with borrow operations. Stockpile borrow material awaiting transport in approved segregated piles. Maintain a minimum of 30 feet between all stockpile toes and the top of the borrow cut.

3.2.1.2 Drainage of Borrow Excavations

Provide adequate drainage of borrow area. Ensure that borrow operations result in minimum detrimental effects on natural environmental conditions.

3.2.1.3 Borrow Area Closure

Complete borrow areas final grading, so that slopes are not steeper than 2 vertical on 1 horizontal, except as otherwise indicated. Avoid abrupt changes in grade. Distribute stripped material and stockpiles of unstable materials over the disturbed borrow area, as directed. Final grade the borrow area to drain.

3.2.2 Contractor Furnished Borrow Area(s)

Obtain approved borrow materials from approved offsite sources. If a borrow source is selected that is not a commercial entity from which soil material is directly purchased, submit a Borrow Plan that includes the borrow source location, geotechnical test results showing the fill material meets the Contract requirements, environmental test results in accordance with paragraph ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR OFF-SITE SOIL, and any Federal, State, and local permits required for excavation and reclamation of the borrow area.

3.2.3 Environmental Requirements for Off-Site Soil

Test offsite soils brought in for use as backfill for Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons (TPH), Benzene, Toluene, Ethyl Benzene, and Xylene (BTEX) and full Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure (TCLP) including ignitability, corrosivity and reactivity. Backfill may not contain concentrations above State and EPA criteria, and for hazardous waste characteristics.

3.3 SURFACE PREPARATION

3.3.1 Clearing and Grubbing

Remove trees, stumps, logs, shrubs, brush and vegetation and other items that would interfere with construction operations. Remove stumps entirely. Grub out matted roots and roots over 3 inches in diameter to at least 18 inches below existing surface.

3.3.2 Stripping

Strip site where indicated on the plans. Strip existing surface materials to a depth of 4 inches below the existing ground surface in areas designated as Clear and Grub on the plans. Strip existing surficial soils to a depth of 6-12 inches in all other areas. Strip in all areas within the planned limits of disturbance. All stripped materials not suitable for reuse as topsoil will be wasted in specified disposal area. Screen all stripped soils to remove roots and organic materials prior disposal.

3.3.3 Proof Rolling

After stripping, excavating, and rough grading to the planned elevation, proof roll the existing subgrade of all building, pavement and embankment locations with six passes of a [loaded tandem axle dump truck] [15 ton, pneumatic-tired or smooth drum roller]. Operate the [roller] [truck] in a systematic manner to ensure the number of passes over all areas, and at speeds between 2.5 to 3.5 miles per hour. Subgrade materials that exhibit excessive deflection and/or rutting during proof rolling need to be scarified, aerated, and re-compacted to specified density at plus or minus 2 percent of optimum moisture content prior to being considered for remedial action by the Contracting Officer. When proof rolling under buildings, the building subgrade is considered to extend 5 feet beyond the building lines, and make one-half of the passes with the roller in a direction perpendicular to the other passes.

3.3.4 Stockpiling Operations

Place and grade stockpiles of satisfactory and wasted materials as specified. Keep stockpiles in a neat and well drained condition, giving due consideration to drainage at all times. Clear, grub, and seal by rubber-tired equipment, the ground surface at stockpile locations; separately stockpile excavated satisfactory and unsatisfactory materials. Protect stockpiles of satisfactory materials from contamination which may destroy the quality and fitness of the stockpiled material. Do not create stockpiles that could obstruct the flow of any stream, endanger a partly finished structure, impair the efficiency or appearance of any structure, or be detrimental to the completed work in any way. If the Contractor fails to protect the stockpiles, and any material becomes unsatisfactory, remove and replace such material with satisfactory material from approved sources.

3.4 EXCAVATION

Excavate to contours, elevation, and dimensions indicated. Excavate soil disturbed or weakened by Contractor's operations, and soils softened or made unstable for subsequent construction due to exposure to weather. Use material removed from excavations meeting the specified requirements in the construction of fills, embankments, subgrades, shoulders, bedding (as backfill), and for similar purposes to minimize surplus material and to minimize additional material to brought on site. Do not excavate below indicated depths except to remove unstable material as determined by the Government and confirmed by the Contracting Officer. Remove and replace excavations below the grades shown with appropriate materials as directed by the Contracting Officer.

If at any time during excavation, including excavation from borrow areas, the Contractor encounters material that may be classified as rock or as hard/unyielding material, uncover such material, and notify the Contracting Officer. Do not proceed with the excavation of this material until the Contracting Officer has classified the materials as common excavation or rock excavation. Failure on the part of the Contractor to uncover such material, notify the Contracting Officer, and allow sufficient time for classification and delineation of the undisturbed surface of such material will cause the forfeiture of the Contractor's right of claim to any classification or volume of material to be paid for other than that allowed by the Contracting Officer for the areas of work in which such deposits occur.

3.4.1 Ditches, Gutters, and Channel Changes

Finish excavation of ditches, gutters, and channel changes by cutting accurately to the cross sections, grades, and elevations shown. Do not excavate below grades shown. Backfill excessive excavation as directed by the Contracting Officer, with satisfactory, compacted, material or with suitable stone or cobble to grades shown. Dispose excavated material as shown or as directed. Do not allow material to be deposited within 4 feet from edge of a ditch. Maintain excavations free from detrimental quantities of leaves, brush, sticks, trash, and other debris until final acceptance of the work.

3.4.2 Trench Excavation Requirements

Excavate the trench as recommended by the manufacturer of the pipe to be installed. Slope trench walls below the top of the pipe, or make vertical, and of such width as recommended by the manufacturer. Provide vertical trench walls where no manufacturer installation instructions are available. Do not exceed the trench width of 24 inches below the top pipe plus pipe outside diameter (O.D.) for pipes of less than 24 inches inside diameter, and do not exceed 36 inches plus pipe outside diameter for pipe sizes larger than 24 inches inside diameter. Where recommended trench widths are exceeded, provide redesign, stronger pipe, or special installation procedures. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of redesign, stronger pipe, or special installation procedures without any additional cost to the Government.

3.4.2.1 Bottom Preparation

Grade the bottoms of trenches accurately to provide uniform bearing and support for the bottom quadrant of each section of the pipe. Excavate

bell holes to the necessary size at each joint or coupling to eliminate point bearing. Remove stones of 1 inch or greater in any dimension, or as recommended by the pipe manufacturer, whichever is smaller, to avoid point bearing.

3.4.2.2 Removal of Unyielding Material

Where overdepth is not indicated and unyielding material is encountered in the bottom of the trench, notify the Contracting Officer. Following approval, remove such material 12 inches below the required grade and replaced with suitable materials as provided in paragraph FILLING AND COMPACTION.

3.4.2.3 Removal of Unstable Material

Where unstable material is encountered in the bottom of the trench, remove such material to the depth directed and replace it to the proper grade with suitable material as provided in paragraph FILLING AND COMPACTION. When removal of unstable material is required due to the Contractor's fault or neglect in performing the work, the Contractor is responsible for excavating the resulting material and replacing it without additional cost to the Government.

3.4.2.4 Excavation for Appurtenances

Provide excavation for manholes, catch-basins, inlets, or similar structures [of sufficient size to permit the placement and removal of forms for the full length and width of structure as shown.

3.4.2.5 Water Lines

Excavate trenches to a depth that provides a minimum cover of 3 feet from the existing ground surface, or from the indicated finished grade, whichever is lower, to the top of the pipe.

3.4.3 Jacking, Boring, and Tunneling

Unless otherwise indicated, provide excavation by open cut except those sections requested and if, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, can be safely and properly installed and backfill. Provide a Jacking, Boring, and Tunneling Plan, signed and sealed by a licensed Professional Engineer that includes a work site layout, methods and procedures, equipment, alignment control, monitoring, and contingency for responding to unplanned movements.

3.4.3.1 Pipeline Casing

Provide new smooth wall pipeline casing under new pavement in a trench. Provide each new pipeline casing, where indicated and to the lengths and dimensions shown, complete and suitable for use with the new piped utility as indicated.

3.4.3.2 Cleaning

Clean inside of the pipeline casing of dirt, weld splatters, and other foreign matter which would interfere with insertion of the piped utilities by attaching a pipe cleaning plug to the boring rig and passing it through the pipe.

3.4.3.3 End Seals

After installation of piped utilities in pipeline casing, provide watertight end seals at each end of pipeline casing between pipeline casing and piping utilities. Provide watertight end seals as indicated.

3.4.4 Underground Utilities

Perform work adjacent to utilities [as indicated] [in accordance with procedures outlined by utility owner. Excavation made with power-driven equipment is not permitted within 2 feet of known utility or subsurface construction. For work immediately adjacent to or for excavations exposing a utility or other buried obstruction, excavate by hand. Start hand excavation on each side of the indicated obstruction and continue until the obstruction is uncovered or until clearance for the new grade is assured. Support uncovered lines or other existing work affected by the contract excavation until approval for backfill is granted by the Contracting Officer. Report damage to utility lines or subsurface construction immediately to the Contracting Officer.

3.4.5 Structural Excavation

Following general excavation and rough grading activities, excavate the entire building footprint area and at least 5 feet beyond, to the deeper of 4 feet below existing grade or 2 feet below bottom of footings. Scarify the exposed surface to a depth of 6 to 8 inches, moisture-condition, and compact to at least 95 percent of laboratory maximum density. Do not excavate to final grade until just before concrete is to be placed. Roughen level surfaces. Cut sloped surfaces as indicated into rough steps or benches to provide a satisfactory bond for compacting materials. For new pavement areas including exterior concrete pads, over-excavate to a minimum of 12 inches below bottom of new pavement/pad base course, scarify, moisture-condition, and compact to at least 95 percent.

Make excavations to the lines, grades, and elevations shown, or as directed. Provide trenches and foundation pits of sufficient size to permit the placement and removal of forms for the full length and width of structure footings and foundations as shown. Clean rock or other hard foundation material of loose debris and cut to a firm, level, stepped, or serrated surface. Remove loose disintegrated rock and thin strata.

Concrete placement is not allowed until footing subgrades have been inspected and approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.4.6 Rock Excavation and Blasting

Excavate rock encountered in the cut section to a depth of 6 inches below finished grade and replace with satisfactory material. Submit a Rock Excavation Plan, prepared and sealed by a registered professional engineer.

3.5 SUBGRADE PREPARATION

3.5.1 General Requirements

Shape subgrade to line, grade, and cross section as indicated. Remove unsatisfactory and unstable material in surfaces to receive fill or in excavated areas, as determined by proof rolling, and replaced with satisfactory materials. Do not place material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, contain frost, or otherwise containing unstable material. Scarify

the surface to a depth of 4 inches prior to placing fill. Step or bench sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal prior to scarifying. Place 4 inches of loose fill and blend with scarified material. When subgrade is part fill and part excavation or natural ground, scarify to a depth of 8 inches.

3.5.2 Subgrade for Structures, Spread Footings, and Concrete Slabs

Do not excavate below depth shown for structures, spread footings, and concrete slabs. If over excavation occurs, notify the Contracting Officer and remove, replace, and compact as directed. After final rolling, the surface of the subgrade for buildings and pavements must not show deviations greater than 0.05 foot when tested with a 12-foot straightedge applied both parallel and at right angles to the centerline of the area.

3.5.3 Subgrade for Pavements

Compact top 12 inches of subgrade for pavements to at least 95 percent of ASTM D1557. After final rolling, the surface of the subgrade for buildings and pavements must not show deviations greater than 0.05 foot when tested with a 12-foot straightedge applied both parallel and at right angles to the centerline of the area.

3.5.4 Subgrade for Shoulders

Compact the upper 6 inches of subgrade for shoulders to at least 95 percent of ASTM D1557 for the full depth of the shoulder.

3.5.5 Subgrade Filter Fabric

Place filter fabric in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 02320 - Geosynthetics. Install in acccordance with ODOT Standard Specifications Section 00331 - Subgrade Stabilization.

3.6 FILLING AND COMPACTION

Prepare ground surface on which backfill is to be placed and provide compaction requirements for backfill materials in conformance with the applicable portions of paragraphs for SUBGRADE PREPARATION. Do not place material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost. Finish compaction by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, or other approved equipment well suited to the soil being compacted. Moisten material as necessary to provide the moisture content that will readily facilitate obtaining the specified compaction with the equipment used. Fill and backfill to contours, elevations, and dimensions indicated. Compact and test each lift before placing overlaying lift.

3.6.1 Trench Backfill

Backfill trenches to the grade shown. Backfill the trench to 2 feet above the top of pipe prior to performing the required pressure tests. Leave the joints and couplings uncovered during the pressure test. Do not backfill the trench until all specified tests are performed.

3.6.1.1 Replacement of Unyielding Material

Replace unyielding material removed from the bottom of the trench with satisfactory material or initial backfill material.

3.6.1.2 Replacement of Unstable Material

Replace unstable material removed from the bottom of the trench or excavation with satisfactory material placed in layers not exceeding 6 inches loose thickness.

3.6.1.3 Bedding and Initial Backfill

Provide bedding of the type and thickness shown. Place initial backfill material and compact it with approved tampers to a height of at least one foot above the utility pipe or conduit. Bring up the backfill evenly on both sides of the pipe for the full length of the pipe. Take care to ensure thorough compaction of the fill under the haunches of the pipe. Except where shown or when specified otherwise in the individual piping section, provide bedding for buried piping in accordance with PART 2 paragraph UTILITY BEDDING MATERIAL. Compact backfill to top of pipe to 85 percent of ASTM D1557. Provide plastic piping with bedding to spring line of pipe.

3.6.1.4 Final Backfill

Do not begin backfill until construction below finish grade has been approved, underground utilities systems have been inspected, tested and approved, forms removed, and the excavation cleaned of trash and debris. Bring backfill to indicated finish grade. Where pipe is coated or wrapped for protection against corrosion, the backfill material up to an elevation 2 feet above sewer lines and one foot above other utility lines need to be free from stones larger than one inch in any dimension. Heavy equipment for spreading and compacting backfill are not to be operated closer to foundation or retaining walls than a distance equal to the height of backfill above the top of footing; compact remaining area in layers not more than 4 inches in compacted thickness with power-driven hand tampers suitable for the material being compacted. Place backfill carefully around pipes or tanks to avoid damage to coatings, wrappings, or tanks. Do not place backfill against foundation walls prior to 7 days after completion of the walls. As far as practicable, bring backfill up evenly on each side of the wall and sloped to drain away from the wall.

Fill the remainder of the trench, except for special materials for pavements with satisfactory material. Place backfill material and compact as follows:

3.6.1.4.1 Turfed or Seeded Areas and Miscellaneous Areas

Deposit backfill in layers of a maximum of 12 inches loose thickness, and compact it to 85 percent maximum density for cohesive soils and 90 percent maximum density for cohesionless soils. Apply this requirement to all other areas not specifically designated above.

3.6.1.5 Buried Tape And Detection Wire

3.6.1.5.1 Buried Warning and Identification Tape

Provide buried utility lines with utility identification tape. Bury tape 12 inches below finished grade; under pavements and slabs, bury tape 6 inches below top of subgrade.

3.6.1.5.2 Buried Detection Wire

Bury detection wire directly above non-metallic piping at a distance not to exceed 12 inches above the top of pipe. Extend the wire continuously and unbroken, from manhole to manhole. Terminate the ends of the wire inside the manholes at each end of the pipe, with a minimum of 3 feet of wire, coiled, remaining accessible in each manhole. Furnish insulated wire over its entire length. Install wires at manholes between the top of the corbel and the frame, and extend up through the chimney seal between the frame and the chimney seal. For force mains, terminate the wire in the valve pit at the pump station end of the pipe.

3.6.2 Structural Fill Placement

Place fill and backfill beneath and adjacent to structures in successive horizontal layers of loose material not more than 8 inches in depth, or in loose layers not more than 4 inches in depth when using hand-operated compaction equipment. Do not place over wet or frozen materials. Compact to at least 90 percent of laboratory maximum density for cohesive materials or 95 percent of laboratory maximum density for cohesionless materials, except as otherwise specified. Perform compaction in such a manner as to prevent wedging action or eccentric loading upon or other damage to the structure. Moisture condition fill and backfill material to a moisture content that will readily facilitate obtaining the specified compaction within range of plus 2 or minus 2 percent of optimum moisture content at the time of compaction.

3.6.3 Backfill for Appurtenances

After the manhole, catchbasin, inlet, or similar structure has been constructed and the concrete has been allowed to cure for 7 days, place backfill in such a manner that the structure is not be damaged by the shock of falling earth. Deposit the backfill material, compact it as specified for final backfill, and bring up the backfill evenly on all sides of the structure to prevent eccentric loading and excessive stress.

3.6.4 Porous Fill Placement

Provide under floor and area-way slabs on a compacted subgrade. Place in a single lift and compact with a minimum of two passes of a hand-operated plate-type vibratory compactor.

3.6.5 Flowable Fill

Place fill in a manner to completely fill voids in the location indicated. Do not place when atmospheric temperatures are expected to be below 33 degrees F at any time during the 3 day period following placement.

3.6.6 Compaction

3.6.6.1 General Site

Compact underneath areas designated for vegetation and areas outside the 5 foot line of the paved area or structure to 90 percent of ASTM D1557.

3.7 EMBANKMENTS

3.7.1 Earth Embankments

Construct earth embankments from satisfactory materials free of organic or frozen material and rocks with any dimension greater than 3 inches. Place the material in successive horizontal layers of loose material not more than 8 inches in depth. Spread each layer uniformly on a soil surface that has been moistened or aerated as necessary and scarified or otherwise broken up so that the fill will bond with the surface on which it is placed. After spreading, plow, disk, or otherwise break up each layer; moisten or aerate as necessary; thoroughly mix; and compact to at least 90 percent laboratory maximum density for cohesive materials or 95 percent laboratory maximum density for cohesionless materials. Backfill and fill material are to be a moisture content that will readily facilitate obtaining the specified compaction.

Compaction requirements for the upper portion of earth embankments forming subgrade for pavements are identical with those requirements specified in paragraph SUBGRADE PREPARATION. Finish compaction by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, vibratory compactors, or other approved equipment.

3.8 RIP-RAP CONSTRUCTION

Construct rip-rap in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00390 - Riprap Protection. in the areas indicated. Trim and dress indicated areas to conform to cross sections, lines and grades shown within a tolerance of 0.1 foot.

3.8.1 Bedding Placement

Spread bedding material uniformly to a thickness of at least 3 inches on prepared subgrade as indicated. Finish bedding to present even surface free from mounds and windrows.

3.8.2 Stone Placement

Place rock for rip-rap on prepared bedding material to produce a well graded mass with the minimum practicable percentage of voids in conformance with lines and grades indicated. Distribute larger rock fragments, with dimensions extending the full depth of the rip-rap throughout the entire mass and eliminate "pockets" of small rock fragments. Rearrange individual pieces by mechanical equipment or by hand as necessary to obtain the distribution of fragment sizes specified above.[For grouted rip-rap, hand-place surface rock with open joints to facilitate grouting and do not fill smaller spaces between surface rock with finer material. Provide at least one "weep hole" through grouted rip-rap for every 50 square feet of finished surface. Provide weep holes with columns of bedding material, 4 inches in diameter, extending up to the rip-rap surface without grout.]

[3.8.3 Grouting

Prior to grouting, wet rip-rap surfaces. Grout rip-rap in successive longitudinal strips, approximately 10 feet in width, commencing at the lowest strip and working up the slope. Distribute grout to place of final deposit and work into place between stones with brooms, spades, trowels, or vibrating equipment. Take precautions to prevent grout from

penetrating bedding layer. Protect and cure surface for a minimum of 7 days.

]3.9 FINISHING/FINISH OPERATIONS

During construction, keep embankments and excavations shaped and drained. Maintain ditches and drains along subgrade to drain effectively at all times. Do not disturb the finished subgrade by traffic or other operation. Protect and maintain the finished subgrade in a satisfactory condition until ballast, subbase, base, or pavement is placed. Do not permit the storage or stockpiling of materials on finished subgrade. Do not lay subbase, base course, ballast, or pavement until the subgrade has been checked and approved, and in no case place subbase, base, surfacing, pavement, or ballast on a muddy, spongy, frozen or otherwise unstable subgrade.

3.9.1 Capillary Water Barrier

Place a capillary water barrier under concrete floor and area-way slabs grade directly on the subgrade and compact with a minimum of two passes of a hand-operated plate-type vibratory compactor.

3.9.2 Grading Around Structures

Construct areas within 5 feet outside of each building and structure line true-to-grade, shape to drain, and maintain free of trash and debris until final inspection has been completed and the work has been accepted.

3.9.3 Shoulder Construction

Construct shoulders of satisfactory material. Submit advanced notice on shoulder construction for rigid pavements. Construct shoulders immediately after adjacent paving is complete. In the case of rigid pavements, do not construct shoulders until permission of the Contracting Officer has been obtained. Compact the entire shoulder area to at least the percentage of maximum density as specified in paragraph SUBGRADE PREPARATION above, for specific ranges of depth below the surface of the shoulder. Finish compaction by sheepsfoot rollers, pneumatic-tired rollers, steel-wheeled rollers, vibratory compactors, or other approved equipment. Finish shoulder construction in proper sequence in such a manner that adjacent ditches will be drained effectively and that no damage of any kind is done to the adjacent completed pavement. Align the completed shoulders true to grade and shaped to drain in conformity with the cross section shown.

3.9.4 Grading

Finish grades as indicated within one-tenth of one foot. Grade areas to drain water away from structures. Maintain areas free of trash and debris. For existing grades that will remain but which were disturbed by Contractor's operations, grade as directed.

3.9.5 Topsoil and Seed

Provide as specified in Section 32 92 19 SEEDING .

On areas to receive topsoil, prepare the compacted subgrade soil to a 2 inches depth for bonding of topsoil with subsoil. Spread topsoil evenly to a thickness of 4 inches and grade to the elevations and slopes shown.

Do not spread topsoil when frozen or excessively wet or dry. Keep topsoil separate from other excavated materials, brush, litter, objectionable weeds, roots, stones larger than 2 inches in diameter, and other materials that would interfere with planting and maintenance operations.

3.10 DISPOSITION OF SURPLUS MATERIAL

Remove from Government property all surplus or other soil material not required or not suitable for filling or backfilling, along with brush, refuse, stumps, roots, and timber. Properly disposed of in accordance with all applicable laws and regulations. Prepare plan for Disposition of Surplus Materials to include permissions document to dispose of nonsalable products.

3.11 TESTING

Perform testing as indicated in Table 1. Submit Material Test Reports within [24 hours] [7 days] of tests being completed.

Material Type [list materials to be tested as identified in paragraph DEFINITIONS]	Location of Material	Test Method	Test Frequency
		Density - [ASTM D1556/D1556M] [ASTM D2167] [ASTM D6938] [ASTM D8167/D8167M]. [When ASTM D6938 or ASTM D8167/D8167M is used, check the calibration curves and adjust using only the sand cone method as described in ASTM D1556/D1556M.]	One test per [2000] [_____] square feet, or fraction thereof, of each lift of fill or backfill areas compacted by other than hand-operated machines. Double testing frequency for areas compacted by hand-operated machines. [If ASTM D6938 or ASTM D8167/D8167M is used, check in-place densities by ASTM D1556/D1556M as follows: One check test per lift for every [6] [10] tests.] [Where ASTM D8167/D8167M is used, provide water content verification in accordance with ASTM D2216 for each test.]
		Moisture Content - ASTM D2216	Two tests per day for each type of fill and backfill. Sample taken immediately prior to compaction after moisture conditioning.

Material Type [list materials to be tested as identified in paragraph DEFINITIONS]	Location of Material	Test Method	Test Frequency
		Moisture Density Relationship - [ASTM D698][ASTM D1557]	One representative test per [500][_____] cubic yards of fill and backfill, or when any change in material occurs which may affect the optimum moisture content or laboratory maximum density. Sample to be taken from stockpile or location of placement.
		Relative Density - ASTM D4253 and ASTM D4254	One test per [2000] [_____] square feet, or fraction thereof, of each lift of fill or backfill areas compacted by other than hand-operated machines. Double testing frequency for areas compacted by hand-operated machines.

Material Type [list materials to be tested as identified in paragraph DEFINITIONS]	Location of Material	Test Method	Test Frequency
		Gradation - ASTM C136/C136M	One representative test per [500][_____] cubic yards of fill and backfill, or when any change in material occurs which may affect the optimum moisture content or laboratory maximum density. Sample to be taken from stockpile or location of placement.
		Atterberg Limits - ASTM D4318	One representative test per [500][_____] cubic yards of fill and backfill, or when any change in material occurs which may affect the optimum moisture content or laboratory maximum density. Sample to be taken from stockpile or location of placement.

Material Type [list materials to be tested as identified in paragraph DEFINITIONS]	Location of Material	Test Method	Test Frequency
		Organic Content Test - ASTM D2974, Method C	One representative test per [200] [_____] lineal [feet] of embankment.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

SECTION 32 11 23

AGGREGATE BASE COURSE FOR FLEXIBLE PAVING

05/22

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 32 11 23

AGGREGATE BASE COURSE FOR FLEXIBLE PAVING
05/22

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 UNIT PRICES

1.1.1 Measurement

1.1.1.1 Area

Measure the quantity of 6 inch thick ABC completed and accepted, in square yards.

1.1.1.2 Volume

Measure the quantity of ABC completed and accepted, in cubic yards. Determine the volume of material in-place and accepted by the average job thickness obtained in accordance with paragraph LAYER THICKNESS and the dimensions shown on the drawings.

1.1.2 Payment

1.1.2.1 Base Course Material

Quantities of ABC, determined as specified above, will be paid for at the respective contract unit prices, which will constitute full compensation for the construction and completion of the ABC.

1.1.2.2 Stabilization

Cohesionless subgrade or subbase courses to be stabilized, as specified in paragraph PREPARATION OF UNDERLYING COURSE OR SUBGRADE, will be paid for as a special item on a tonnage basis including extra manipulation as required.

1.1.3 Waybills and Delivery Tickets

Submit copies of waybills and delivery tickets during progress of the work. Before the final payment is allowed, file certified waybills and certified delivery tickets for all aggregates actually used.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM C117	(2023) Standard Test Method for Materials Finer than 75-um (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates by Washing
ASTM C136/C136M	(2019) Standard Test Method for Sieve

	Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
ASTM D75/D75M	(2019) Standard Practice for Sampling Aggregates
ASTM D1556/D1556M	(2015; E 2016) Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method
ASTM D1557	(2012; E 2015) Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft3) (2700 kN-m/m3)
ASTM D2487	(2017; E 2020) Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
ASTM D3665	(2012; R 2017) Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D4318	(2017; E 2018) Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils
ASTM D4718/D4718M	(2015) Standard Practice for Correction of Unit Weight and Water Content for Soils Containing Oversize Particles
ASTM D6938	(2017a) Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
ASTM E11	(2024) Standard Specification for Woven Wire Test Sieve Cloth and Test Sieves

Oregon Department of Transportation, Oregon Standard Specifications for Construction

Section 00641	(2024) Aggregate Subbase, Base, and Shoulders
Section 00641.1	(2024) Materials
Section 00641.41	(2024) Mixing, Hauling, and Placing
Section 00641.43	(2024) Thickness and Number of Layers
Section 00641.44	(2024) Shaping and Compacting

1.3 DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this specification, the following definitions apply.

1.3.1 Aggregate Base Course

Aggregate base course (ABC) is well graded, durable aggregate uniformly

moistened and mechanically stabilized by compaction.

1.3.2 Graded-Crushed Aggregate Base Course

Graded-crushed aggregate (GCA) base course is well graded, crushed, durable aggregate uniformly moistened and mechanically stabilized by compaction.

1.3.3 Degree of Compaction

Degree of compaction required, except as noted in the second sentence, is expressed as a percentage of the maximum laboratory dry density obtained by the test procedure presented in ASTM D1557 abbreviated as a percent of laboratory maximum dry density. Since ASTM D1557 applies only to soils that have 30 percent or less by weight of their particles retained on the 3/4 inch sieve, express the degree of compaction for material having more than 30 percent by weight of their particles retained on the 3/4 inch sieve as a percentage of the laboratory maximum dry density in accordance with ASTM D1557 Method C and corrected with ASTM D4718/D4718M.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Plant, Equipment, and Tools; G

Waybills and Delivery Tickets

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Perform sampling and testing using a laboratory approved in accordance with Section 01 45 00 QUALITY CONTROL. Do not start work requiring testing until the testing laboratory has been inspected and approved. [All contractor quality control testing laboratories performing acceptance testing require USACE validation by the Material Testing Center (MTC) for both parent laboratory and on-site laboratory. Validation on all laboratories is required to remain current throughout the duration of the paving project. Contact the MTC manager listed at https://mtc.erdc.dren.mil/requestvalidation.aspx# for costs and scheduling.] Test the materials to establish compliance with the specified requirements and perform testing at the specified frequency. Furnish copies of test results within 24 hours of completion of the tests.

1.5.1 Sampling

Take samples for laboratory testing in conformance with ASTM D75/D75M.

1.5.2 Tests

1.5.2.1 Gradation Analysis

Perform gradation analysis in conformance with ASTM C117 and

ASTM C136/C136M using sieves conforming to ASTM E11.

1.5.2.2 Liquid Limit and Plasticity Index

Determine liquid limit and plasticity index in accordance with ASTM D4318.

1.5.2.3 Moisture-Density Determinations

Determine the laboratory maximum dry density and optimum moisture content in accordance with paragraph DEGREE OF COMPACTION.

1.5.2.4 Field Density Tests

Measure field density in accordance with ASTM D1556/D1556M, or ASTM D6938. For the method presented in ASTM D1556/D1556M use the base plate as shown in the drawing. For the method presented in ASTM D6938 check the calibration curves and adjust them, if necessary, using only the sand cone method as described in Annex A2 of ASTM D6938. Use ASTM D6938 to determine the moisture content of the soil. Check the calibration curves furnished with the moisture gauges along with density calibration checks as described in ASTM D6938. Make the calibration checks of both the density and moisture gauges using the prepared containers of material method, as described in Annex A2 of ASTM D6938, on each different type of material being tested at the beginning of a job and at intervals as directed. Submit calibration curves and related test results prior to using the device or equipment being calibrated.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Perform construction when the atmospheric temperature is above 35 degrees F. When the temperature falls below 35 degrees F, protect all completed areas by approved methods against detrimental effects of freezing. Correct completed areas damaged by freezing, rainfall, or other weather conditions to meet specified requirements.

1.7 ACCEPTANCE

1.7.1 Tolerances

Acceptance of ABC is based on compliance with the tolerances presented in Table 1. Remove any materials found to be non-compliant and replace with compliant material or rework, as directed, to meet the requirements of this specification

TABLE 1

Measurement	Tolerance
Grade	Plus 1/4 inch, Minus 1/2 inch
Smoothness	Plus/Minus 3/8 inch
Individual Test Total Thickness	Plus/Minus
Average Job Thickness	Plus/Minus

TABLE 1	
Compaction	Minimum 100 percent

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATES

2.1.1 Coarse Aggregate

Provide coarse aggregates with angular particles of uniform density. Separately stockpile coarse aggregate supplied from more than one source. Provide coarse aggregates in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00641 - Aggregate Subbase, Base, and Shoulders.

2.1.1.1 Aggregate Base Course

Provide aggregate base course in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00641.1 - Materials.

2.1.2 Fine Aggregate

Provide fine aggregates consisting of angular particles of uniform density.

2.1.3 Gradation Requirements

Apply the specified gradation requirements to the completed base course. Provide aggregates that are continuously well graded within the limits specified in TABLE 2. Use sieves that conform to ASTM E11.

TABLE 2. GRADATION OF AGGREGATES			
Percentage By Weight Passing Square-Mesh Sieve			
Sieve Designation	No. 1	No. 2	No.3
2 inch	100	---	---
1-1/2 inch	70-100	100	---
1 inch	45-80	60-100	100
1/2 inch	30-60	30-65	40-70
No. 4	20-50	20-50	20-50
No. 10	15-40	15-40	15-40
No. 40	5-25	5-25	5-25

TABLE 2. GRADATION OF AGGREGATES			
No. 200	0-8	0-8	0-8

2.2 LIQUID LIMIT AND PLASTICITY INDEX

Apply liquid limit and plasticity index requirements to the completed course and to any component that is blended to meet the required gradation. Limit the portion of any component or of the completed course passing the No. 40 sieve to be either nonplastic or have a maximum liquid limit of 25 and a maximum plasticity index of 5.

2.3 TESTS, INSPECTIONS, AND VERIFICATIONS

2.3.1 Initial Tests

Perform one of each of the following initial tests on the proposed material prior to commencing construction to demonstrate that the proposed material meets all specified requirements when furnished. Complete this testing for each source if materials from more than one source are proposed. Submit certified copies of test results for approval a minimum of 30days before material is required for the work.

a. Gradation Analysis.

b. Liquid limit and plasticity index.

c. Moisture-density relationship.

2.3.2 Approval of Material

Tentative approval of material will be based on initial test results.

2.4 EQUIPMENT, TOOLS, AND MACHINES

All plant, equipment, and tools used in the performance of the work are subject to approval by the Government before the work is started and shall conform to ODOT standard Specifications. Maintain all plant, equipment, and tools in satisfactory working condition at all times. Submit a list of proposed equipment, including descriptive data. Use equipment capable of minimizing segregation, producing the required compaction, meeting grade controls, thickness control, and smoothness requirements as set forth herein.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

When the ABC is constructed in more than one lift, clean the previously constructed lift of loose and foreign matter by sweeping with power sweepers or power brooms. Use hand brooms in areas where power cleaning is not practicable. Provide adequate drainage during the entire period of construction to prevent water from collecting or standing on the working area.

3.2 STOCKPILING MATERIAL

Clear and level storage sites prior to stockpiling of material. Stockpile all materials, including approved material available from excavation and grading, in the manner and at the locations designated. Stockpile aggregates on the cleared and leveled areas designated to prevent segregation. Stockpile materials obtained from different sources separately.

3.3 PREPARATION OF UNDERLYING COURSE OR SUBGRADE

Clean the underlying course or subgrade of all foreign substances prior to constructing the base course(s). Do not construct base course(s) on underlying course or subgrade that is frozen. Construct the surface of the underlying course or subgrade to meet specified compaction and surface tolerances. Correct ruts or soft yielding spots in the underlying courses, areas having inadequate compaction, and deviations of the surface from the specified requirements set forth herein by loosening and removing soft or unsatisfactory material and adding approved material, reshaping to line and grade, and recompacting to specified density requirements. For cohesionless underlying courses or subgrades containing sands or gravels, as defined in ASTM D2487, stabilize the surface prior to placement of the base course(s). Stabilize by mixing ABC into the underlying course and compacting by approved methods. Proof roll in accordance with paragraph PROOF ROLLING. Consider the stabilized material as part of the underlying course and meet all requirements of the underlying course. Do not allow traffic or other operations to disturb the finished underlying course and maintain in a compliant condition until the base course is placed.

3.4 GRADE CONTROL

Provide a finished and completed base course conforming to the lines, grades, and cross sections shown. Place line and grade stakes as necessary for control.

3.5 MIXING AND PLACING MATERIALS

3.5.1 Mixing

Mixing shall be done in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00641.41 - Mixing, Hauling, and Placing.

3.5.2 Placing

Placing shall be done in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00641.41 - Mixing, Hauling, and Placing.

3.6 LAYER THICKNESS

Layer thickness shall comply with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00641.43 - Thickness and Number of Layers.

3.7 COMPACTION

Compaction shall be done in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00641.44 - Shaping and Compacting.

3.8 PROOF ROLLING

In addition to the compaction specified, proof roll areas designated on the drawings by application of one coverage of a heavy pneumatic-tired roller having four or more tires abreast, each tire loaded to a minimum of 30,000 pounds and inflated to a minimum of 125 psi. A coverage is defined as the application of one tire print over the designated area. In the areas designated, apply proof rolling to the top of the underlying material on which the base course is laid and to the top of the completed base course. Maintain water content of the underlying material and each lift of the base course as specified in Paragraph COMPACTION from start of compaction to completion of proof rolling of that lift. Remove any base course materials or any underlying materials that produce permanent deformation exceeding 3/8 inch by proof rolling and replace with satisfactory materials. Then recompact and proof roll to meet these specifications.

3.9 EDGES OF BASE COURSE

Place the base course(s) so that the completed section is a minimum of 1 foot wider, on all sides, than the next lift that will be placed above it. Place approved material along the outer edges of the base course in sufficient quantity to compact to the thickness of the course being constructed. When the course is being constructed in two or more lifts, simultaneously roll and compact at least a 2 foot width of this shoulder material with the rolling and compacting of each lift of the base course.

3.10 FINISHING

Finish the surface of the top lift of base course after final compaction and proof rolling]by cutting any overbuild to grade and rolling with a steel-wheeled roller. Do not add thin lifts of material to the top lift of base course to meet grade. If the elevation of the top lift of base course exceeds the tolerances of paragraph ACCEPTANCE, scarify the top lift to a depth of at least 3 inches and blend new material in and compact [and proof roll] to bring to grade. Make adjustments to rolling and finishing procedures to minimize segregation and degradation, obtain grades, maintain moisture content, and produce an acceptable base course. If the surface become rough, corrugated, uneven in texture, or traffic marked prior to completion, scarify the non-compliant portion and rework and recompact it or replace as directed.

3.11 SMOOTHNESS TEST

Construct the top lift so that the surface shows no deviations exceeding the tolerances of paragraph ACCEPTANCE when tested with a 12 foot straightedge. Test the entire area in both a longitudinal and a transverse direction on parallel lines. Perform the transverse lines at a maximum spacing of 15 feet or less apart, as directed. Perform the longitudinal lines at the centerline of each placement lane, regardless of whether multiple lanes are allowed to be paved at the same time, and at the 1/8th point in from each side of the lane. Hold the straightedge in contact with the surface and moved ahead one-half the length of the straightedge for each successive measurement. Determine the amount of surface irregularity by placing the freestanding (unleveled) straightedge on the pavement surface and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface. Determine measurements along the entire length of the straight edge. Correct deviations exceeding this amount by removing material and replacing with new material, or by

reworking existing material and compacting it to meet these specifications.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

3.12.1 In-Place Tests

Perform each of the following in-place tests on samples taken from the placed and compacted ABC. Determine sample locations using random sampling in accordance with ASTM D3665. Take samples and test at the rates indicated.

a. Perform density tests on every lift of material placed and at a frequency of one set of tests for every 250 square yards, or portion thereof, of completed area. Gradations containing more than 30 percent retained on the ¾ inch sieve can produce inconsistent compacted density values when tested in accordance with paragraph DEGREE OF COMPACTION.

b. Perform gradation analysis on every lift of material placed and at a frequency of one sieve analysis for every 500 square yards, or portion thereof, of material placed.

c. Perform liquid limit and plasticity index tests at the same frequency as the sieve analysis.

d. Measure the thickness of the base course at intervals providing at least one measurement for each 500 square yards of base course or part thereof. Measure the thickness using test holes, at least 3 inch in diameter through the base course.

3.12.2 Approval of Material

Final approval of the materials will be based on tests for gradation, liquid limit, and plasticity index performed on samples taken from the completed and fully compacted course(s).

3.13 TRAFFIC

Completed portions of the base course can be opened to limited traffic, provided there is no marring or distorting of the surface by the traffic. Do not allow heavy equipment on the completed base course except when necessary for construction. When it is necessary for heavy equipment to travel on the completed base course, protect the area against marring or damage to the completed work. Repair damage to meet these specifications.

3.14 MAINTENANCE

Maintain the base course in a satisfactory condition until the full pavement section is completed and accepted. Immediately repair any defects and repeat repairs as often as necessary to keep the area intact. Retest any base course that was not paved over prior to the onset of winter to verify that it still complies with the requirements of this specification. Rework or replace any area of base course that is damaged as necessary to comply with this specification.

3.15 DISPOSAL OF UNSATISFACTORY MATERIALS

Dispose of any unsuitable materials that have been removed as directed. No additional payments will be made for materials that have to be replaced.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

SECTION 32 12 16.16

ROAD-MIX ASPHALT PAVING

11/20

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 32 12 16.16

ROAD-MIX ASPHALT PAVING
11/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM D2041/D2041M	(2011) Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity and Density of Bituminous Paving Mixtures

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-03 Product Data

Mix Design; G

Contractor Quality Control; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Materials; G

QC Monitoring

SD-07 Certificates

Laboratory Accreditation and Validation

1.3 ACCEPTANCE

1.3.1 Acceptability of Work

Acquire the services of an independent commercial laboratory to perform acceptance testing. Acceptance of the plant produced mix and in-place requirements will be on a lot to lot basis. The materials and the pavement itself will be accepted on the basis of production testing. The Government may make check tests from split samples to validate the results of the production testing. Testing performed by the Government does not reduce the required testing of the independent commercial laboratory. Split samples will be taken for Government testing to reduce the

variability between the independent commercial laboratory and the Government's test results. When the difference between the independent commercial laboratory and the Government's test results for split samples exceed the acceptable range of two results for multilaboratory precision for the appropriate test method (i.e. ASTM) then at least one of the laboratories is determined to be in error. An evaluation of procedures and equipment in both laboratories will be made to determine the cause(s) for the differences. Develop steps to correct procedures and equipment to bring multilaboratory precision to within acceptable limits.

1.3.2 Acceptance Requirements

Provide all sampling and testing required for acceptance. Where appropriate, acceptance for individual lots of asphalt pavement will be made based on laboratory air voids, in-place density, smoothness, and grade in accordance with the following paragraphs. Surface smoothness and grade determinations will be made on the lot as a whole. Exceptions or adjustments to this will be made in situations where the mix within one lot is placed as part of both the intermediate and surface courses, thus smoothness and grade measurements for the entire lot cannot be made.

1.3.3 Pavement Lots

Divide the production into approximately equal lots as shown in Table 1. When cores are being used for the compactions evaluation, randomly obtain one core from each lot. When the nuclear density gauge is being used for compaction evaluation, obtain two random readings from each lot and average the results.

TABLE 1

Daily Production (Tons)	Number of Lots
0-300	1
301-600	2
601-1000	3
1001-1500	4

1.3.4 Theoretical Maximum Density (TMD)

Measure theoretical maximum density one time for each sublot in accordance with ASTM D2041/D2041M for purposes of calculating laboratory air voids and determining in-place density. The average TMD for each lot will be determined as the average TMD of the random sublot samples. When the TMD on both sides of a longitudinal joint is different, the average of these two TMD values will be used as the TMD needed to calculate the percent joint density.

1.3.5 In-place Density

Develop the Job Mix Formula, sample, and test in accordance with ODOT Contractor Mix Design Guidelines for Asphalt Concrete and Section 00744.13 Job Mix Formula Requirements and using the Superpave Design Method.

1.3.6 Surface Smoothness

Use a straightedge and profilograph for measuring surface smoothness. Use the profilograph method for all longitudinal testing, except for paving lanes less than 0.25 miles in length. Use the straightedge method for transverse testing, for longitudinal testing where the length of each pavement lane is less than 0.25 miles, and at the ends of the paving limits for the project. Smoothness requirements do not apply over crowns or grade breaks. Maintain detailed notes of the testing results and provide a copy to the Government immediately after each day's testing.

1.3.6.1 Smoothness Requirements

Smoothness requirements shall be in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00749.46 - Pavement Smoothness.

1.3.6.1.1 Straightedge Testing

Provide finished surfaces of the pavements with no abrupt change of 1/4 inch or more when checked with an approved 12 foot straightedge. Remove and replace surface lift lots when the surface smoothness exceeds 3/8 inch, at no additional cost to the Government. High spots can be diamond ground as an alternative to remove and replace in order to meet surface smoothness requirements at individual locations.

1.3.6.2 Testing Method

After the final rolling, but not later than 24 hours after placement, test the surface of the pavement in each entire lot in a manner to reveal surface irregularities exceeding the tolerances specified above. If any pavement areas are diamond ground, retest these areas immediately after diamond grinding. The maximum area allowed to be corrected by diamond grinding is 10 percent of the total area of the lot. Test the entire area of the pavement with a profilograph. Check a number of random locations along with any observed suspicious locations primarily at transverse and longitudinal joints with the straightedge.

1.3.6.2.1 Straightedge Testing

Use the straightedge to measure abrupt changes in surface smoothness. Hold the straightedge in contact with the pavement surface and measure the maximum distance between the straightedge and the pavement surface. Determine the amount of surface irregularity by placing the freestanding (unleveled) straightedge on the pavement surface and allowing it to rest upon the two highest spots covered by its length, and measuring the maximum gap between the straightedge and the pavement surface in the area between these two high points.

1.3.7 Plan Grade

Provide a final wearing surface of pavement conforming to the elevations and cross sections shown and not vary more than 0.05 foot from the plan grade established and approved at site of work. Within 5 working days after completion of a particular lot incorporating the final wearing course, test the final wearing surface of the pavement for conformance with specified plan grade requirements. Match finished surfaces at juncture with other pavements with finished surfaces of abutting pavements. Deviation from the plan elevation will not be permitted in areas of pavements where closer conformance with planned elevation is

required for the proper functioning of drainage and other appurtenant structures involved. For roads, the grade will be determined by running lines of levels along the centerline at intervals of 25 feet or less longitudinally to determine the elevation of the completed pavement surface. Measure transverse grades at appropriate intervals. Diamond grinding can be used to remove high spots to meet grade requirements. Skin patching for correcting low areas or planing or milling for correcting high areas will not be permitted. Maintain detailed notes of the results of the testing and provide a copy to the Government immediately after each day's testing.

1.3.8 Laboratory Accreditation and Validation

Provide laboratories used to develop the Job Mix Formula (JMF), perform acceptance testing, and Contractor Quality Control testing that meet the requirements of ODOT Standard Specification Section 00745.13 - Job Mix Formula Requirements. Provide laboratories with a masonry saw having a diamond blade for trimming pavement cores and samples. Perform all required test methods by an accredited laboratory. Schedule and provide payment for laboratory inspections. Additional payment or a time extension due to failure to acquire the required laboratory accreditation is not allowed. Submit a certificate of compliance signed by the manager of the laboratory stating that it meets these requirements to the Government prior to the start of construction. At a minimum, include the following certifications:

a. Qualifications of personnel; laboratory manager, supervising technician, and testing technicians.

b. A listing of equipment to be used in developing the job mix.

c. A copy of the laboratory's quality control system.

1.4 [Enter Appropriate Subpart Title Here][Enter Appropriate Subpart Title Here][Enter Appropriate Subpart Title Here]ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

Do not place the asphalt mixture upon a wet surface or when the surface temperature of the underlying course is less than specified in Table 2. The temperature requirements may be waived by the Government, if requested; however, meet all other requirements including compaction.

Table 23. Table 2. Surface Temperature Limitations of Underlying Course

Mat Thickness, inches	Degrees F
3 or greater	40
Less than 3	45

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Perform the work consisting of pavement courses composed of mineral aggregate and asphalt material heated and mixed in a central mixing plant and placed on a prepared course. Provide asphalt pavement designed and constructed in accordance with this section conforming to the lines,

grades, thicknesses, and typical cross sections shown on the drawings. Construct each course to the depth, section, or elevation required by the drawings and rolled, finished, and approved before the placement of the next course. Submit proposed Placement Plan indicating lane widths and longitudinal joints for each course or lift.

2.1.1 Asphalt Mixing Plant

Provide mixing plants in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance.

2.1.1.1 Truck Scales

Weigh the asphalt mixture on approved scales, or on certified public scales at no additional expense to the Government. Inspect and seal scales at least annually by an approved calibration laboratory.

2.1.1.2 Inspection of Plant

Provide access to the Government at all times, to all areas of the plant for checking adequacy of equipment; inspecting operation of the plant; verifying weights, proportions, and material properties; checking the temperatures maintained in the preparation of the mixtures and for taking samples. Provide assistance as requested, for the Government to procure any desired samples.

2.1.1.3 Storage bins

The asphalt mixture can be stored in non-insulated storage bins for a period of time not exceeding 3 hours. The asphalt mixture can be stored in insulated storage bins for a period of time not exceeding 8 hours. Provide the mix drawn from bins that meets the same requirements as mix loaded directly into trucks.

2.1.2 Hauling Equipment

Provide hauling equipment in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance.

2.1.3 Asphalt Pavers

PProvide asphalt pavers in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance.

2.1.3.1 Receiving Hopper

Provide paver with a receiving hopper of sufficient capacity to permit a uniform spreading operation and a distribution system to place the mixture uniformly in front of the screed without segregation. Provide a screed that effectively produces a finished surface of the required evenness and texture without tearing, shoving, or gouging the mixture.

2.1.3.2 Automatic Grade Controls

Provide a paver equipped with a control system capable of maintaining the specified screed elevation. One of three methods can be used to control grade: stringline, laser, or computerized elevations along with GPS. For multiple layers it is acceptable to control the grade in the underlying layer and control the grade of the surface layer by applying a constant

thickness over the underlying layer which has been placed to the desired grade. Slope control can also be used to control the grade of the surface for roads, but is not acceptable for wide pavements such as parking lots. Provide transverse slope controller capable of maintaining the screed at the desired slope within plus or minus 0.1 percent.

2.1.4 Rollers

Provide rollers in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance.

2.1.5 Diamond Grinding

Those performing diamond grinding are required to have a minimum of three years experience in diamond grinding. In areas not meeting the specified limits for surface smoothness and plan grade, reduce high areas to attain the required smoothness and grade, except as depth is limited below. Reduce high areas by diamond grinding the asphalt pavement with approved equipment. Perform diamond grinding by sawing with saw blades impregnated with an industrial diamond abrasive. Assemble the saw blades in a cutting head mounted on a machine designed specifically for diamond grinding that produces the required texture and smoothness level without damage to the asphalt pavement or joint faces. Provide diamond grinding equipment with saw blades that are 1/8-inch wide, a minimum of 60 blades per 12 inches of cutting head width, and capable of cutting a path a minimum of 3 feet wide. Diamond grinding equipment that causes raveling, fracturing of aggregate, or disturbance to the underlying material will not be allowed. The maximum area corrected by diamond grinding the surface of the asphalt pavement is 10 percent of the total area of any lot. The maximum depth of diamond grinding is 1/2 inch. Provide diamond grinding machine equipped to flush and vacuum the pavement surface. Dispose of all debris from diamond grinding operations off Government property. Prior to diamond grinding, submit a Diamond Grinding Plan for review and approval. At a minimum, include the daily reports for the deficient areas, the location and extent of deficiencies, corrective actions, and equipment. Remove and replace all pavement areas requiring plan grade or surface smoothness corrections in excess of the limits specified.

Prior to production diamond grinding operations, perform a test section at the approved location, consisting of a minimum of two adjacent passes with a minimum length of 40 feet to allow evaluation of the finish and transition between adjacent passes. Production diamond grinding operations cannot be performed prior to approval.

2.2 MATERIALS

2.2.1 Coarse Aggregate

Provide aggregates in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00641 - Aggregate Subbase, Base, and Shoulders.

2.3 WARM-MIX ASPHALT TECHNOLOGIES/PRODUCTS

Provide warm-mix asphalt technologies/products that have a record of good performance and are listed on the Oregon Department of Transportation (ODOT) Qualified Products List (QPL).

2.4 MIX DESIGN

The JMF shall conform to the requirements of ODOT Standard Specification 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance and the latest ODOT Contractor Mix Design Guidelines for Asphalt Concrete

2.4.1 Adjustments to JMF

Adjustments to the JMF shall conform to the requirements of ODOT Standard Specification Section 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance.

2.5 RECYCLED HOT MIX ASPHALT

Recycled asphalt mixture may be used in the manufacture of asphalt pavements. Provide recycled asphalt mixture consisting of reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP), coarse aggregate, fine aggregate, mineral filler, and asphalt cement. Provide RAP of a consistent gradation, asphalt content, and properties. Maintain RAP stockpiles free from contamination including coal-tar sealers. Limit the maximum RAP chunk size to 2 inches when feeding RAP into the plant. Provide RAP job mix that meets the requirements of paragraph MIX DESIGN. Limit the amount of RAP in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00744 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement.

2.5.1 RAP Aggregates and Asphalt Cement

Provide a blend of aggregates used in the recycled mix that meet the requirements of paragraph MATERIALS. Establish the percentage of asphalt binder in the RAP for the mixture design according to ASTM D2172/D2172M or ASTM D6307 using the appropriate dust correction procedure.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL

3.1.1 General Quality Control Requirements

Submit the Quality Control Plan. Do not produce hot-mix asphalt for acceptance until the quality control plan has been approved. In the quality control plan, address all elements which affect the quality of the pavement including, but not limited to:

a. Mix Design and unique JMF identification code

b. Aggregate Grading

c. Quality of Materials

d. Stockpile Management and procedures to prevent contamination

e. Proportioning

f. Mixing and Transportation

g. Mixture Volumetrics

h. Moisture Content of Mixtures

i. Placing and Compaction

j. Joints

k. Surface Smoothness

l. Truck bed release agent

3.1.2 Quality Control Testing

Perform all quality control tests applicable to these specifications and as set forth in the Quality Control Program. Use the independent commercial laboratory for acceptance testing in paragraph ACCEPTANCE. Use in-house capabilities or the independent commercial laboratory for quality control testing. Required elements of the testing program include, but are not limited to tests for the control of asphalt content, aggregate gradation, aggregate moisture, moisture in the asphalt mixture, temperatures, VMA, and in-place density. Develop a Quality Control Testing Plan as part of the Quality Control Program.

3.1.2.1 Asphalt Content

Determine asphalt content a minimum of twice per lot (a lot is defined in paragraph PAVEMENT LOTS) using the ignition method in accordance with ASTM D6307. Use the extraction method in accordance with ASTM D2172/D2172M if the correction factor for the ignition method in ASTM D6307 is greater than 1.0. The asphalt content for the lot will be determined by averaging the test results.

3.1.2.2 Aggregate Properties

Determine aggregate gradations a minimum of twice per lot from mechanical analysis of extracted aggregate in accordance with ASTM D5444, ASTM C136/C136M, and ASTM C117. Determine the specific gravity of each aggregate size grouping for each 20,000 tons in accordance with ASTM C127 or ASTM C128. Determine fractured faces for gravel sources for each 20,000 tons in accordance with ASTM D5821. Determine the uncompacted void content of natural sand, manufactured sand, and blended aggregate for each 20,000 tons in accordance with AASHTO T 304 Method A.

3.1.2.3 Moisture Content of Aggregate

Determine the moisture content of aggregate used for production a minimum of once per lot in accordance with ASTM C566.

3.1.2.4 Moisture Content of Asphalt Mixture

Determine the moisture content of the asphalt mixture at least once per lot in accordance with AASHTO T 329.

3.1.2.5 Temperatures

Check temperatures at least four times per lot, at necessary locations to determine the temperature at the dryer, the asphalt cement binder in the storage tank, the asphalt mixture at the plant, and the asphalt mixture at the job site.

3.1.2.6 VMA

Obtain mixture samples at least four times per lot. Calculate the VMA of each specimen in accordance with AI MS-2 based on ASTM C127 and ASTM C128 bulk specific gravity for the aggregate.

3.1.2.7 In-Place Density

Conduct any necessary testing to ensure the specified density is achieved. A nuclear gauge or other non-destructive testing device can be used to monitor pavement density.

3.1.2.8 Additional Testing

Perform any additional testing deemed necessary to control the process.

3.1.2.9 QC Monitoring

Submit all QC test results to the Government on a daily basis as the tests are performed. The Government reserves the right to monitor any of the Contractor's quality control testing and to perform duplicate testing as a check to the Contractor's quality control testing.

3.1.3 Sampling

When directed by the Government, sample and test any material which appears to not meet specification requirements unless such material is voluntarily removed and replaced or deficiencies corrected. Perform all sampling in accordance with standard procedures specified.

3.2 PREPARATION OF ASPHALT MIXTURE

Weigh or meter the aggregates and the asphalt cement and introduce into the mixer the amount specified by the JMF. Mix the combined materials until the aggregate obtains a uniform coating of asphalt binder and is thoroughly distributed throughout the mixture. The moisture content of all asphalt mixture upon discharge from the plant is not to exceed 0.5 percent by total weight of mixture as measured by AASHTO T 329.

3.3 PREPARATION OF THE UNDERLYING SURFACE

Immediately before placing the asphalt mixture, clean the underlying course of dust and debris. Apply a tack coat in accordance with ODOT.

3.4 TRANSPORTING AND PLACING

3.4.1 Transporting

Transport asphalt mixture from the mixing plant to the site in clean, tight vehicles. Schedule deliveries so that placing and compacting of mixture is uniform with minimum stopping and starting of the paver. Provide adequate artificial lighting for night placements. Hauling over freshly placed material will not be permitted until the material has been compacted as specified, and allowed to cool to 140 degrees F.

3.4.2 Placing

Placing shall be done in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification

Section 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance.

3.5 COMPACTION OF MIXTURE

3.5.1 General

Compaction shall be done in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance.

3.5.2 Segregation

The Government can sample and test any material that looks deficient. When the in-place material appears to be segregated, the Government has the option to sample the material and have it tested and compared to the [aggregate gradation, asphalt content, and in-place density requirements in ODOT Standard Specifications Section 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance. If the material fails to meet these specification requirements, remove and replace the extent of the segregated material the full depth of the layer of asphalt mixture at no additional cost to the Government. When segregation occurs in the mat, take appropriate action to correct the process so that additional segregation does not occur.

3.6 JOINTS

Joints (longitudinal and transverse) shall be constructed in accordance with ODOT Standard Specification Section 00745 - Asphalt Concrete Pavement - Statistical Acceptance.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 35 - WATERWAY AND MARINE CONSTRUCTION

35 01 41.00 10

ELECTROMECHANICAL OPERATING MACHINERY FOR LOCKS AND DAMS

08/20, CHG 3: 05/23

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

35 01 41.00 10

ELECTROMECHANICAL OPERATING MACHINERY FOR LOCKS AND DAMS
08/20, CHG 3: 05/23

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

This Part specifies the technical requirements for the design, manufacture, delivery to the site, installation, commissioning, and field testing of the mechanical trashrake and accessories to be furnished, complete in accordance with these Specifications by the equipment supplier hereinafter called the Contractor

1.1.1 Equipment Overview

The following summarizes the equipment and the Contractor's responsibilities during supply and installation. The Contractor shall furnish all components and accessories that are usual and required for the intended use of the trashrake, even if they are not specifically called out herein.

a. Principal Items to be Furnished. The Contractor shall design, detail, manufacture, deliver, install, commission, and field test the following equipment complete with appurtenances, spare parts and maintenance equipment, all in accordance with its intended use and with these Specifications for manual and automatic dislodging of debris accumulated at the intake trashracks of the East Fish Ladder AWS Backup System.

(1) One trashrake, overhead mounted, traveling type, complete but not limited to the main beam-chassis, supports, braces, trolley, platform, double telescopic boom system, raking and tilting hydraulic cylinders, power unit, bristle roller-head, festoon system, hardware, control system, and all other accessories required, for a complete working system. Rake support frame, anchors, shall be designed for worst loading conditions of the trashrake.

(2) All trolley mounted walkways, platform, hand railing, supports, drip pans, and anchoring as shown on the Plans to access the platform for trolley maintenance.

b. Operation of Trashrake. The trashrake shall be used to automatically and continuously dislodge the debris accumulated on intake trashracks by freeing up or/and disturbing the trash to drop by gravity to accumulate at the trashrack bottom (El 104.0 or below) so that it can be washed away by the natural flow of the river. The trashrake shall be capable of helping in removing all debris which shall include but not be limited to small sticks and aquatic plant foliage, etc.

c. Supplementary Equipment to be Furnished. The Contractor shall also furnish and deliver a complete set of maintenance tools needed for the lubrication, adjustment and normal maintenance of the trashrake equipment. These tools shall be neatly supplied in a heavy-duty steel cabinet complete with locks. Any special tools related to the

installation, adjustment, and maintenance of the rake shall be supplied by the Contractor.

d. The Contractor shall provide all consumable items including hydraulic oil and grease required for the initial filling/lubrication of the equipment and 2 years of operation.

1.1.2 Spare Parts

The Contractor shall also supply recommended spare parts for 2 years of operation. An itemized cost shall be furnished along with the bid with total cost for all spares included in the bid price. At a minimum the following spare parts must be supplied:

1.1.2.1 Mechanical Spare Parts

a. Bristle Roller: qty 6

b. Boom System Cable (15 m): qty 4

c. Boom Chain Master Link: qty 4

d. Side Travel Chain (15 m): qty 1

e. Boom Roller Kits: qty 2

f. Brushes: qty 6

g. Hydraulic pump-motor assembly: qty 1

f. Seal Kit- Tilt Cylinder: qty 1

g. Suction Strainer: qty 5

h. Return Filter Cartridge: qty 5

i. Hydraulic Fluid: qty 5 gal

j. Tilt Cylinder: qty 1

k. Grease - Food Grade: qty 4 lb.

l. Set of Hoses: 1

1.1.2.2 Electrical Spare Parts

a. Contactor Coils: qty 4 sets

b. Fuses: qty 6 sets

c. Sensors: qty 2 sets

d. Indicating lights: qty 6 sets

e. Pushbuttons: qty 6 sets

f. Directional Valve Solenoid Coil: qty 4 sets

g. Flat Cables: qty 1 set

1.1.3 Field Measurements

The Contractor shall be provided with the civil general arrangement drawings and trashracks "As Installed" drawings. The Contractor shall visit the project site, confirm all dimensions shown on the drawings and collect any additional measurement and data required for the proper design, fit, and functioning of the trashrake equipment before starting the fabrication of the trashrake.

1.2 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION (AISC)

AISC 360	(2016) Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI B31.1	(1994) Power Piping
ANSI B93.18	(1987) Non-Integral Industrial Fluid Power Hydraulic Reservoirs

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING (ASNT)

ASNT SNT-TC-1A	(2020) Recommended Practice for Personnel Qualification and Certification in Nondestructive Testing

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B46.1	(2020) Surface Texture, Surface Roughness, Waviness and Lay

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS D1.1/D1.1M	(2020; Errata 1 2021) Structural Welding Code - Steel
AWS D1.6/D1.6M	(2017) Structural Welding Code – Stainless Steel

ASTM INTERNATIONAL (ASTM)

ASTM A36/A36M	(2019) Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A276/A276M	(2024) Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes
ASTM A380/A380M	(2017) Standard Practice for Cleaning, Descaling, and Passivation of Stainless Steel Parts, Equipment, and Systems

ASTM A564/A564M	(2019) Standard Specification for Hot-Rolled and Cold-Finished Age-Hardening Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes
ASTM B21/B21M	(2020) Standard Specification for Naval Brass Rod, Bar, and Shapes
ASTM D3233	(1993; R 2014) Standard Test Methods for Measurement of Extreme Pressure Properties of Fluid Lubricants (Falex Pin and Vee Block Methods)
ASTM D3951	(2018) Commercial Packaging
ASTM D4172	(1994; R 2016) Standard Test Method for Wear Preventive Characteristics of Lubricating Fluid (Four-Ball Method)

CSA GROUP (CSA)

CSA W47.1	(R 2024) Fusion Welding of Steel Company Certification

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 112	(2017) Standard Test Procedure for Polyphase Induction Motors and Generators

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1	(2021) Motors and Generators

SOCIETY FOR PROTECTIVE COATINGS (SSPC)

SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2	(2015) Near-White Blast Cleaning

SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS INTERNATIONAL (SAE)

SAE AS4059	(2022) Cleanliness Standard

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS (USACE)

EM 385-1-1	(2024) Safety -- Safety and Occupational Health (SOH) Requirements
EM 1110-2-1424	(2016) Engineering and Design -- Lubricants and Hydraulic Fluids

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Preconstruction Submittals

Installation and Alignment Procedure; G

Equipment Protection Plan; G

Materials List; G

Commissioning; G

Pre-Functional Checklist

Functional Checklist

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Detail Drawings; G

Materials Orders

Shipping Bills

SD-03 Product Data

Manufacturer's Literature and Equipment Data; G

SD-05 Design Data

Trashrake Equipment; G

Design Data Calculations; G

SD-06 Test Reports

Electric Motors

Final Operating Test; G

Startup and Acceptance Test

Inspection Log

Shop Assembly and Tests

SD-07 Certificates

Qualification of Welders and Welding Operators

Equipment Warranty

Erecting Engineer Installation and Operation

Nondestructive Examination Certification

Commissioning Document

SD-08 Manufacturer's Instructions

Cleaning of Corrosion-Resisting Steel; G

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Operations and Maintenance (O&M) Manual; G

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.4.1 Manufacturer and Assembler

The trashrake supplier responsible for manufacturing, assembly, supervision of installation, commissioning and testing of the trashrake equipment shall be one who is in the business of furnishing and installing the hydraulic trashrake equipment and electrical control of such equipment for no less than 10 years and shall have at least 3 working hydraulic trashrake installations with similar or larger size and capacity, which have been in operation for not less than 5 years. The designer of the hydraulic hoist shall be a Professional Engineer registered in the State of Oregon with at least 10 years of experience designing such equipment. The trashrake manufacturer shall be subject to the Owner's approval. All documents, certifications, memberships to standards and/or professional organizations, the manufacturers comply with, shall be submitted.

1.4.2 Acceptable Erecting Engineer

The trashrake manufacturer's representative shall be present on site during the installation of the trashrake equipment and during testing of the trashrake equipment and shall provide oversight for its installation, testing and commissioning activities. The manufacturer's representative shall have been involved in the shop assembly and testing of the equipment and shall have a detailed working knowledge of the equipment supplied. He/she shall have at least 10 years of experience in the installation of hydraulic trashrake systems for similar debris management applications.

Upon completion of the work and at a time designated, provide the services of one or more erecting engineers for training Government personnel in accordance with the requirements of paragraph FIELD TRAINING.

1.4.3 Warranty

All equipment supplied shall be guaranteed to perform properly for a period of 2 years after the equipment is accepted by the Owner.

1.5 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

The trashrake shall be an overhead mounted, double telescopic boom type, running on main beam (chassis), mechanically and hydraulically operated, rake machine with bristle roller. The overall design of the rake shall follow ASME/ANSI/ASTM standards for design and safety. All rake machinery, accessories, appurtenances and their installation shall meet the requirements of these specifications and contract drawings.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1.6.1 Delivery Location

Upon completion of fabrication, testing, and at the Contracting Officers direction deliver specified equipment to the Dalles Dam.

1.6.2 Delivery, Storage and Handling of Equipment

Protect equipment and components from corrosion, deformation, and other types of damage. Store items in enclosed and secured areas free from contact with soil. Provide moisture proof weather protection for all equipment stored in outdoor locations. Transport, handle and store all equipment in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Remove and replace damaged items with new items. Do not prepare the major pieces of trashrake equipment and subassemblies for shipment until they have been inspected and accepted for shipment at origin by the Contracting Officer, unless inspection has been waived in writing. Ship each subassembly completely assembled. Submit the shipping bills with the delivery of finished pieces to the site.

1.6.2.1 Packaging

Provide equipment and subassemblies with adequate protective pads, supports, and blocking. Securely restrain equipment and subassemblies to prevent distortion or damage to the painted surfaces in transit. Any loss or damage during shipment, including damage to the painted surfaces, is the responsibility of the Contractor. Replace or repair lost or damaged items without cost to the Government. Coat all parts with a rust preventative, wrap in heavy-duty plastic, and securely contain in wooden crates. Clearly mark each crate with its contents (including contract number and Corps mark number) on the outside, with a non-ferrous metal tag, engraved with the contents, and secured to the crate with non-ferrous screws. Provide a means for inspection of the crate's contents without destroying the crate. Pack all accessories and spare parts separately in containers plainly marked "ACCESSORIES ONLY," or "SPARE PARTS ONLY." Package each spare part or spare part assembly in a durable treated wooden crate with metallic, plastic or suitable outer shell for weathertight protection and with provisions for handling and long-term storage (60 months). Provide and deliver the component and assembly spare parts as delineated on the drawings. Place a separate packing list, listing the contents of each crate, in a moisture-proof envelope securely fastened to the outside of the crate. Standard commercial packaging in accordance with ASTM D3951 is acceptable except where a different method or standard of packaging is specified.

1.6.2.2 Shipping, Preservation, and Storage

Provide all packing, crating, e.g., necessary to ensure safe shipment of equipment. The crates become the property of the Government unless specifically waived. Fill or protect the equipment with the necessary fluids, coatings, and/or preservatives to maintain in a stable condition without corrosion, deterioration, or degradation for an extended period of storage of up to 12 months. All shipping charges, and brokerage charges are the responsibility of the Contractor. Items subject to open storage for several months at the jobsite shall be suitably protected from weather damage. Where necessary, heavy parts shall be mounted on skids or shall be crated, and any articles or materials that might be otherwise lost shall be boxed or steel banded in bundles and plainly marked for identification. All parts exceeding 150 lb., gross weight, shall be prepared for shipment so that slings for handling may be readily attached while the parts are on a car, truck, special trailer. Boxed parts, where it is unsafe to attach slings to the box, shall be packed with slings so that attachment to the handling equipment can be readily made. All parts subject to damage from moisture shall be packed in hermetically sealed metal containers or plastic envelopes with sufficient quantities of a

hygroscopic material inside, or in other approved containers, within their respective packing cases. Protect stored equipment from the weather, humidity, temperature variation, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.

All machined surfaces shall be heavily coated with a rust-preventing compound. Each case, crate, bundle, and single item shall be marked clearly with the purchase order number and project name, shipping address and number of boxes. Each container shall be clearly marked, and the contents identified for proper warehousing. All fasteners and miscellaneous plates, templates, and fixtures required for field connections, splices, alignment, etc. shall be shipped in marked boxes keyed to the erection drawings. A complete packing list shall accompany each shipment. The following additional requirements shall apply:

1.6.2.2.1 Spare Parts and Tools

All spare parts and tools shall be packed separately in containers plainly marked "Spare Parts Only" or "Tools Only" and indicating the item of equipment to which they belong. A packing list, indicating the contents of the container, shall be securely fastened in a moisture-proof envelope to the outside of each container. The packing list shall also provide the following information; as applicable:

a. Manufacturer;

b. Purchase order and project name; and

c. Identification, including manufacturer's part number, relevant drawing

1.7 DELEGATED DESIGN

Design of primary structural steel connections and platforms as indicated in the contract documents shall be designed in accordance with AISC 360. Submit design calculations for steel fabrications and connections signed and sealed by a registered professional engineer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

2.1.1 General

All materials incorporated in the fabrication of trashrake shall be new and both workmanship and materials shall be of first-class quality, free from defects and imperfections, and, where indicated by the Specifications, of the classification and grades designated therein. Materials not specifically designated shall be suitable for the purpose and shall comply with the latest specifications of the ASTM or equal.

a. The use of cast iron shall be limited to parts of a non-structural nature.

b. Materials having relative motion shall be selected so that they are non-galling with respect to each other. Also, all dissimilar metals shall be isolated from each other using insulating material.

c. All parts, components and assemblies which are heavier than 32 lb. shall be provided with suitable provisions for handling such as eyebolts, lugs, hooks, tapped holes for eyebolts or holes with rounded

corners for passing slings.

d. Equipment shall be suitable for outdoor use and storage.

2.1.2 Selection of Materials

Materials for major items of trashrake equipment shall be as follows:

a. Structural Members: Structural steel ASTM A36/A36M or approved equal.

b. Journal Bearings: Self-lubricating bronze bearings as manufactured by reputed bearing manufacturer shall be used for heavy bearing conditions.

c. Bolts and Axles: All bolts and axles on which will be subject to frequent assembly and disassembly, shall be of corrosion resistant steel. All such nuts shall be of bronze in accordance with ASTM B21/B21M, Alloy 464, half-hard, naval brass, or of corrosion resistant steel compatible with the corrosion resistant steel bolts which will not cause galling.

d. Pins: All pins shall be of stainless steel or chrome plated cold rolled steel.

e. Rigid Electrical Conduit: Hot-dip galvanized steel.

f. Locking of Bolted Connections. All screws, bolts, and nuts shall be provided with a locking device such as locknuts, lock washers or pins.

g. All concrete anchors shall be provided as described in Section 05 05 20 POST-INSTALLED CONCRETE AND MASONRY ANCHORS.

h. All structural supporting members and hardware of the primary rake anchorage shall be provided as described in Section 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL.

2.2 EQUIPMENT

2.2.1 General

Furnish equipment under this specification consisting of one (1) trashrake intake cleaning machinery equipped with a rotating brush and other necessary items to provide a complete and operable system. The trashrake shall be overhead traveling type with double telescopic booms and mechanically and hydraulically operated. The trashrake shall have automatic control as well as manual controls (from pendant pushbuttons and a local cabinet), along with all sensors, timers, and switches required for automatic operation, also called indexing. The trashrake shall be equipped with boom system and rotating bristle brush to dislodge the debris from the trashracks. Trashrake shall be provided with load limiting device which will constantly monitor pull force on the rake. In case of erroneous operation resulting in rake getting stuck, device will shut down and signal an alarm condition.

2.2.2 Operating Conditions

The trashrake shall be capable of dislodging the debris described above and dislodging it to the intake bottom at El. 104.0 or below, so that it is washed away by the natural flow of river. There shall be no flow

through the trashracks during raking operation, however, a crossflow velocity of 5.5 ft/sec will be present as natural river current during river high flows. The control shall facilitate manual, automatic, continuous operation and adjustability for automatic intermittent operation. The equipment will not be interlocked with the intake operational controls and automatic operation will be an operator locally initiated sequence while the intake is not operational. The equipment shall be provided with timed automatic and remote automatic input controls but these features will not initially be used.

2.2.2.1 Environment

The trashrake shall be designed for outdoor service for removing the debris such as small sticks and aquatic plant foliage, etc. that accumulates at the forebay intake. The rake shall be capable of operation between 20F and 110F site temperatures. For normal operation during extreme cold conditions, thermostatically controlled heaters shall be installed in the oil reservoir, electrical control cabinet.

2.2.3 Equipment Layout

The trashrake shall be a double boom system, raking system and other accessories mounted on the running rails supported on the pier face at EL 170.3 as shown on the Contract Drawing. The running rails must include drip catchment basins located in the machinery parking location and access platforms for operator access to service and maintain the equipment within the machinery enclosure. All access panels must be fully removable with quarter turn fasteners.

2.2.4 Equipment Interlocks

All electrical and hydraulic system shall be protected against any overload or unusual operation, with manual reset required at the control panel.

2.2.5 Mechanical Features

The mechanical features of the equipment shall comply with the following general guidance:

a. All parts subject to wear or damage caused by dust shall be totally enclosed in dust-proof housings where possible.

b. All bearings shall be selected for a B-10 life of not less than 50,000 hours under design speed and load conditions. All bearing housings shall be of cast iron, cast steel or welded steel construction.

c. Provisions shall be made for proper lubrication of all parts. All high-speed gears chain, sprocket, if provided shall be provided with adequate lubrication. Bearings shall be provided with means of pressure lubrication. The trashrake shall be provided with all necessary lubrication fittings. Suitable drip pans shall be provided to collect oil and grease which may drip from operating parts. Drip pans shall be accessible for draining and cleaning.

2.2.6 Electrical Features

Conform electrical equipment, including limit switches, motor starters, conduit, conductors, controls, etc., to the requirements of Section 26 05

00 COMMON ELECTRICAL WORK, Section 26 05 19.10 INSULATED WIRE AND CABLE and Section 40 60 00 PROCESS CONTROL.

2.2.6.1 Electrical Equipment

The electrical equipment such as the PLCs, HMI, motor starter, control transformer, timers, relays, overload protections, status & alarm contacts, fuses and other control devices shall be mounted in a weather-proof lockable enclosure (minimum NEMA 4X enclosure rating) on the intake forebay deck. A thermostatically controlled space heater shall be provided to prevent condensation within the enclosure. Electrical supply to the trashrake will be 480V, 60 Hz, 3-phase. Adequate light shall be provided under the traveling chassis of the rake so as to sufficiently illuminate the raking area.

2.2.6.2 Control Overview

Control of the trashrake and brushing system is described as follows:

a. Operation of the rake shall be possible in auto as well as manual mode. Handheld pendant pushbutton stations shall be provided with plugs at the east end of the rake and at the EL 185.0 deck level with a minimum of 15 ft of cable lengths for manual (local-pendant mode) operation.

b. In the local-automatic mode, a cycle start command from the HMI will start the cleaning operation in automatic mode.

c. Remote unit status contacts will be provided in the enclosure to include unit ready, start, stop, running, and alarm conditions.

d. Rake shall be capable of continuous or intermittent manual or auto operation by adjusting the timer in a 24-hour period.

e. Rake shall be capable of running based on an external signal to start contacts based on level differential across the trash rack under remote-automatic mode (however this mode of operation will not initially be used).

2.2.7 Nameplate

Provide an engraved or raised stainless steel nameplate that is mechanically attached to each piece of equipment. Include the manufacturer's name, model designation, serial number, unit rating, application factor, hydraulic oil specs, unit weights, and any other applicable information on the nameplate.

2.2.8 Equipment Submittal Data

Submit Equipment Data and Detail Drawings for the trashrake showing capacities, lifts, and orientation at extreme positions. The drawings shall show all interfacing details with the trashracks, including provisions made for dislodging of debris from the racks and for depositing at the rack bottom area. All major tolerances shall be clearly shown. Structural and mechanical assembly and detailed drawings for the trashrake, including those of hydraulic cylinders, stroke, operating speeds, power unit, motor horsepower, speeds, etc. Hydraulic schematic, electrical full-line diagram, front of the panel layout and control drawings. Drawings shall show full material list table including weight

for each component. Dimensions and weight for the major assemblies shall be clearly shown on the drawings.

Submit a materials list for fabricated items at the time as the detail drawings submittal.

Submit copies of all materials orders including purchase orders, mill orders, shop orders and work orders for materials prior to using the materials in the work.

Submit Manufacturer's Literature and Equipment Data for approval. Provide catalog cuts and material data for the proposed equipment that clearly indicates compliance with the requirements of these specifications and the drawings. Include the names of the manufacturers of all machinery and other equipment contemplated for incorporation into the work, performance capacities and other pertinent information about the equipment.

Submit Design Data calculations showing adequacy for the structural members, mechanical, and hydraulic components. Design calculations shall be stamped by a registered Professional Engineer of the appropriate discipline.

Approval of the material submitted in no way relieves the Contractor from the responsibility of complying with the requirements of the specifications as to the suitability and quality of materials and workmanship and the adequacy of capacity, operating speed and other essential characteristics of the trashrake operation controls. Submit drawings, catalogs, and design data necessary to clearly show the details of any changes proposed in conformity with the requirements of this specification. Equipment, materials, and articles of construction installed or used without such approval will be at the risk of subsequent rejection.

2.3 DESIGN CRITERIA

Provide equipment and machinery to meet the anticipated operating conditions as specified by the following design criteria.

2.3.1 Design Parameters

The principal design parameters for the trashrake and machinery are shown below.

a. Purpose. The trashrake shall be used for dislodging the debris, including small sticks and aquatic plant foliage, accumulates at the intake of the AWS Backup System.

b. Quantity of Supply. One

c. Type. Overhead mounted, traveling type, double telescopic boom type, running on main beam/running rails, mechanically and hydraulically operated.

d. Cleaning Head. Cleaning head shall be rotating bristle roller/brush type, 15 inch diameter min., driven by hydraulic motor with 4-5 ft. roller width.

e. Location. Forebay intake at EL 170.3 in the East Fish Ladder AWS Backup System.

f. Trashrack and Bar Spacing. Total size of intake trashracks is 23 ft. wide, 66.0 ft. high, 1'-7.25" thick rack panels (total eleven panels of 6.0 ft height). The sill elevation for the trashracks is El 104.0 m, where all the debris shall be collected, so that it can be swept away by natural current of the Columbia River.

g. Maximum trashrack flow velocity. There shall be no flow through the trashracks during raking operation, however, a crossflow velocity of 5.5 ft/sec will be present as natural river current during maximum river high flows.

h. Maximum head on trashracks sill. 56 ft. (max. pool level: El 160.0)

i. Trashrake Travel Length. Minimum travel 30.0 ft. (assuming minimum 2 ft trolley clearance from nearby trashrack panel slot in the pier).

j. Operating Speeds.

- o Raking speed: 20-45 ft/min.
- o Trolley travel speed: 25-45 ft/min.
- o Bristle Roller rpm: 25-30 rpm.
- o One stroke up/down cycle time: 5 minutes or less.
- o Total intake cleaning time: 30 minutes or less.

k. Environment. Trashrake shall be suitable for outdoor use where it is directly exposed to wind, rains and snow. The minimum and maximum temperatures expected at dam site are 20 degrees F - 110 degrees F respectively.

2.3.2 Allowable Stresses

The maximum allowable stresses in materials used for various parts of the equipment are specified herein. However, the Contractor shall be responsible for a design based on factors proven in practice and shall use lower working stresses where conditions indicate, or as dictated by operating conditions.

2.3.2.1 Maximum Allowable Stresses

2.3.2.1.1 General

Adequate factors of safety shall be used throughout the design, especially in the design of parts subject to alternating stresses, vibration, impact, or shock.

2.3.2.1.2 Structural Members

a. Normal Loading Conditions. Under normal loading conditions maximum shear stresses in cast iron shall not exceed 10 percent of the ultimate tensile strength. The allowable stresses in the structural steel members under normal loading will be 90 percent of those given in AISC "Specification for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings". For structural members not covered by AISC, the maximum stresses in tension or compression shall not exceed 60 percent of the yield strength or 20 percent of the ultimate tensile strength.

b. Seismic Load Condition. The maximum stresses shall not exceed 80

percent of the minimum yield strength of the material used.

2.3.2.1.3 Mechanical Components, Shafts, and Pins

The working stresses, bearing pressures, and other design criteria for the mechanical components shall be based on consideration of functional requirements, dynamic loading, impact, and stress concentration effects. Stresses computed for rated load capacity in no case shall exceed 20 percent of the ultimate strength of the materials involved. Under seismic load conditions, the stresses shall not exceed 80 percent of the minimum yield strength of the materials used.

2.4 OPERATION SEQUENCES

The equipment sequence of operation, interlocks and electrical controls are as indicated on Sheet M-106 of the Contract Drawings and Section 40 60 00 PROCESS CONTROL.

2.5 EQUIPMENT COMPONENT DETAILS

The trashrake equipment arrangement and components details are as follows:

2.5.1 Trolley Layout

Main beam/running rail/chassis for the trashrake shall be supported on the steel columns/brackets mounted on the pier faces. A rope and pulley arrangement with hydraulic cylinder based telescopic boom system shall be mounted on a trolley-running over the main beam or running rails. The length of the main beam shall be such that a parked trolley at one end of the rail does not interfere with the handling or replacement of trash rack panels during trashrack handling. Beam/running rails shall also confirm that retracted boom would not interfere with the vehicles traveling on the bridge. The support brackets shall be of welded construction and suitably anchored to the piers to stabilize against the maximum overturning moment, with adequate safety factor. All structural members of the support frame shall be designed to resist the compressive loads resulting from the worst condition of operation. Trolley mounted platform shall include drip pans under the primary machinery housing and two 5000-lb rated D-ring style tie off points. Platform and tie-off points shall be compliance with EM 385-1-1.

2.5.2 Raking Arrangement and Tilting Cylinder

Raking operation shall be accomplished double boom system, which is multi-stage and telescopic, operated mechanically and hydraulically, and capable of raising or lowering the boom system and bristle roller/brush head. Separate tilting cylinders shall be capable of moving the booms in or out of the intake-flow direction, providing adequate force and clearance between rake head and trashracks before starting the trash cleaning operation, so as to dislodge the debris for accumulation at the trashrack bottom. Tilting hydraulic cylinders shall tilt the booms to hold the rake against the racks at a constant pressure while the boom is lifted up or down. An integrally mounted load holding device shall be provided to prevent uncontrolled lowering of the boom in the event of hydraulic system failure.

2.5.3 Bristle Roller/Brush (Rake) Head

The Bristle Roller shall be provided as follows:

a. Rake head shall have an approximately 15 inch diameter bristle roller, mounted on the twin telescopic booms and operated with hydraulic motor. Bristle shall be capable of dislodging the debris, including small sticks and aquatic plant foliage, leaves, etc. to accumulate at the bottom of intake.

b. The effective raking width shall be minimum 4.0 feet during the working stroke.

c. Bristle roller/brush shall be made of nylon other suitable material with good wear resistance and service life, while smoothly riding the uneven trash rack bar surfaces while dislodging the debris. In case of the failure of roller rotation, bristle roller shall be able to clean the debris through raking operation. Bristle roller (spare) shall be provided in 3 different stiffnesses of bristle.

2.5.4 Hydraulic Actuators

2.5.4.1 General

a. The trashrake shall be equipped with hydraulic actuators comprising of hydraulic cylinders and hydraulic power system. The actuators shall be designed to perform their intended functions in accordance with the requirements of these Specifications.

b. All hydraulic actuator parts and components, such as seals, gaskets, pumps, valves, and hoses; that are normally or may accidentally come in contact with hydraulic fluid shall be compatible with the hydraulic fluid used. All hydraulic actuator parts and components that might be exposed to submergence, splash water or humid weather shall be suitable to resist without damage due to water and the corrosive and other effects of submergence and exposure. To prevent galvanic corrosion, non-metallic insulators shall be used between dissimilar metals.

c. The system hydraulic pressure shall be limited to 2250 psi only, and all hydraulic equipment shall be designed with adequate safety margin over the system design pressure.

d. Hydraulic fluid shall be biodegradable and environmentally friendly, suitable for cold temperatures in accordance with EM 1110-2-1424 "Lubricants and Hydraulic Fluids".

e. Hydraulic arrangement shall ensure that cylinders and piping are permanently and completely full of hydraulic fluid under normal working conditions at all times, to avoid internal corrosion effects of moisture and other corrosive agents contained in air.

f. Hydraulic arrangement shall ensure, insofar as possible, that there is a positive fluid pressure within cylinder and piping, so that in the event of any lack of tightness, no air or water shall enter the hydraulic system.

g. Flexible pipe connections shall be provided to prevent distortion of pipes due to expansion and contraction under extreme temperatures and to facilitate convenient field assembly of the piping where necessary.

2.5.4.2 Hydraulic Cylinders

2.5.4.2.1 General

a. A hydraulic cylinder assembly shall include a cylinder tube, cylinder heads, piston, piston rod, seals, piston rod scraper/wiper, accessories, and appurtenances.

b. In addition to other required specifications, hydraulic cylinder assemblies shall conform to all applicable requirements of Section VIII, Division 1 of the ASME Code or equivalent. ASME certification is not required, but the cylinder shall be fabricated by a reputable manufacturer of hydraulic cylinders.

2.5.4.2.2 Cylinder Body

The cylinder body shall be a seamless tube, machined in one piece. If manufacture of un-machined tubes of the required length is not feasible, the cylinder tube shall be built from a maximum of 2 separate tube sections welded together with full strength 100 percent radiographically inspected welds and then machined in one piece. The cylinder shall be straight and true and shall be of sufficient wall thickness to resist maximum operating pressure and bending forces that could be imposed upon it.

2.5.4.2.3 Piston Rod

a. The material for piston rod shall be solid bar of corrosion-resistant steel (ASTM A564/A564M, type 630), with a hard-chrome plated outer surface.

b. For hard-chrome plated piston rod, the minimum plating thickness shall be 0.001 in. after machining.

c. Outer surface of the piston rod, which contacts the piston rod guide bushing and seals, shall be ground and polished to a uniformly concentric finish having a surface roughness equal to, or better than, 8 micro-inches.

2.5.4.2.4 Pins

Connecting pin, where used, shall be of corrosion-resistant steel ASTM A564/A564M, Type 630 or equal. The pin shall be positively secured against axial movement by either a shoulder on one end and a washer and retaining pin on the other end, or by a washer and retaining pin on both ends, or by bolted retaining plates.

2.5.4.2.5 Seals

Piston seals and piston rod piston seals shall be of the chevron-type or superior packing seals for piston and for piston rod, mechanically locked in place. Seals shall resist roll, turn, and extrusion. On hoist cylinders designed for fluid pressure acting from either side, a set of piston seals shall be provided on each side.

2.5.4.3 Hydraulic Piping

All the piping and appurtenances shall conform to the applicable requirements of ANSI B31.1, "Code for Pressure Piping-Power Piping" or

equal. All piping or tubing shall preferably be of corrosion-resistant steel with corrosion-resistant steel flanges and fittings. All pipe fittings shall be of the socket-welding type. All pipe supports such as pipe hangers, anchors, guides, clamps, etc., shall be furnished and shall conform to the applicable requirements of ANSI B31.1 "Code for Pressure Piping-Power Piping" or equal.

2.5.4.3.1 Flexible Connections

The flexible connections shall allow reconnection of the hydraulic power unit or hoist cylinder without realignment and shall also permit the necessary freedom of movement of the hoist cylinder in its mounting. For flexible connections either flexible hoses or steel pipes designed for flexibility shall be used.

2.5.4.3.2 Flexible Hoses

All flexible hoses shall have a hydraulic fluid resistant inner tube and adequate braids of high-strength steel wire reinforcement separated by layers of synthetic rubber. The hoses shall have an oil, weather and abrasion resistant synthetic rubber cover. The allowable design pressure will have adequate factor of safety over the hose burst pressure.

2.5.4.4 Hydraulic Power System

The hydraulic power unit shall include a hydraulic reservoir, electric motor driven pumps, pressure relief, counterbalance, check, flow control and directional control valves, pressure and temperature gages, filters and strainers, piping, and all accessories, appurtenances, and wiring required to provide an operational fluid power system for the operation of the rake according to the requirements of these Specifications. All of the components shall be mounted on the hydraulic reservoir.

2.5.4.4.1 Fluid Reservoir

The hydraulic fluid reservoir shall be of corrosion resistant steel (ASTM A276/A276M, type 304) and shall conform to ANSI B93.18 or equal. The reservoir shall be provided with baffle plates and an access opening for clean-out. The reservoir shall also be equipped with a sight fluid level gage, thermostatically controlled heaters, minimum oil level indicating device, thermometer to indicate fluid temperature, valve drain connection, a magnetic plug type drain arranged to permit complete drainage, a filler pipe provided with a strainer, and a breather cap with filter. The breather cap shall be a dust filter or silica gel type and shall be mounted directly on the hydraulic reservoir. The breather shall function as an air filter to eliminate moisture and particulate contamination within the reservoir. The reservoir shall be provided with lifting and jacking lugs as required for its handling.

2.5.4.4.2 Hydraulic Valves

All valves shall be rated to withstand pressure not less than 25% greater than the maximum system pressure. All pressure relief and flow control valves shall be preset in the shop to their operational setting. Each manually operated valve shall be furnished with a corrosion-resistant tag suitably engraved or stamped to identify the valve according to its designation on the hydraulic circuit drawing and according to its function in the system.

a. All shut-off valves shall be ball valves.

b. All check valves shall be spring-loaded for closure with minimum shock. Pilot operated check valves shall be provided where the check valve has to open against pressure.

c. All directional-control valves shall be of standard manufacture and nominally rated for zero leakage.

d. All pressure-relief valves shall be of the hydraulically operated type. The valves shall be adjustable and shall maintain the pressure within 5 percent of the preset value.

e. All flow-control valves shall be of the adjustable type with an integral check valve for free return. All valves shall be shop tested to pass the required flow within 5 percent.

f. All velocity fuses (line rupture protection valve) shall be cartridge type valves. Valves shall be rated to pass at least 10 percent more than the required flow.

2.5.4.4.3 Filters and Strainers

Filters shall be of the disposable, replaceable-element type. Strainers shall be of the cleanable, replaceable-element type. Elements of all filters and strainers shall be stainless steel or Monel woven or wound wire.

2.5.4.4.4 Hydraulic Fluid

The hydraulic fluid used shall be fully biodegradable environmentally friendly oil with the workable viscosity range for all temperatures encountered at the site. The temperature in the winter could go as low as 20 degrees F - 110 degrees F, thus trashrake must be able to work without any adverse impact on its working. Before filling the system with hydraulic fluid, the system cleanliness shall conform to SAE AS4059, Class 7.

2.6 ELECTRIC MOTORS

Provide a motor with Horizontal shaft, squirrel cage induction, high slip, high torque, 460 volt, 3 phase, 60 Hertz type motor controlled by across the line magnetic starter rated for continuous duty and conform to the applicable requirements of NEMA MG 1 and rated at a minimum of 8 percent and maximum of 13 percent slip for [both high and low speed] windings. The enclosure is to be totally enclosed, fan cooled, and weatherproof type. Provide the motors with a removable stainless steel drain. Remove the drain as specified by the motor manufacturer. Motor installation is in an exterior location subjected to the weather elements. Speed/torque characteristics are to be as described herein. Locate conduit boxes on the side of the motor as indicated. Seal the motor shaft with a labyrinth type seal where the shaft penetrates the front and back of the motor.

2.6.1 Construction

Motor frame size shall be in accordance with NEMA. Temperature rise cannot be greater than 176 degrees F. Provide an internal heater of the strip type as part of the motor. The heater is to have a minimum capacity of 90 W and have separate leads terminating in a separate conduit box.

Heater power supply is to be 120 volt, 60 Hertz, single phase. Use Class F insulation throughout the motor. Impregnate motor windings with the insulating compound by the vacuum/pressure impregnating method. Repeat the procedure until all voids in the winding are completely filled with the insulating material. Provide antifriction type motor bearings incorporating a suitable method for lubrication. Bearing ratings are to meet or exceed a L-10 life of 30,000 hours at full radial load. Provide the motor with a visible nameplate indicating motor horsepower, voltage, phase, hertz, RPM, full load amps, frame size, manufacturer's name and model number, service factor, and serial number. Submit motor performance data at the time the motors are submitted. The data includes: percent efficiency, percent amperes, percent power factor, and percent slip plotted against 0 to maximum allowable motor overload above 100 percent for both high and low speed windings; and torque (ft-lb.) and amperes plotted against 0-100 percent synchronous speed for both high and low speed windings.

2.6.2 Electric Motor Factory Tests

Factory test all motors to ensure that they are free from electrical and mechanical defects. Perform tests in compliance with IEEE 112 and NEMA MG 1. Document test results in accordance with the guidance indicated in IEEE 112 and NEMA MG 1. Testing includes the following. Additionally, perform all tests normally conducted by the manufacturer as part of its quality control program, but not specified herein.

2.6.2.1 No Load Test

For each winding (high and low speed); at no load and rated frequency and 100 percent rated voltage; record the current, voltage, frequency, kilowatt input, and RPM.

2.6.2.2 Locked Rotor Test

For each winding (high and low speed); with the motor blocked and at rated test frequency and 50 percent rated voltage; record the voltage, current, frequency, and kilowatt input. Repeat for 100 percent rated voltage.

2.6.2.3 High Potential Test

For each winding (high and low speed): Record voltage and duration.

2.6.2.4 Stator Winding Resistance Test

For each winding (high and low speed): Record resistance in ohms between the stator winding terminals. Record the temperature in degrees C.

2.7 PAINTING

Paint all exposed ferrous surfaces on the equipment. Painting preparation shall be in accordance with SSPC SP 10/NACE No. 2, to a near white metal finish. Surfaces shall be painted with a zinc rich epoxy primer (3-5 mils), polyamine epoxy intermediate coat (6-8 mils) and a Polyurethane top coat (3-5 mils)Color selections shall be subject to owner's approval

2.8 SHOP ASSEMBLY AND TESTS

2.8.1 General

a. The trashrake equipment is to be completely assembled in the shop and tested in the presence the Contracting Officer. Notify the Contracting Officer at least 10 calendar days before testing of each machinery unit. This notification includes information on how many units will be tested and the estimated time frame involved with each test.

b. The witnessing of a particular test may be waived by the Contracting Officer; however, the approved commissioning shop test procedures, notification, and documentation should still be performed as required by these specifications. Once informed that Government personnel will witness the test(s), notify the Contracting Officer that a particular test is scheduled as planned a minimum of 48 hours prior to the test(s). Perform all necessary preparations and preliminary testing prior to issuing the 48 hour notification.

c. Commence testing upon the arrival of Government personnel at the scheduled location and time. Design and furnish a test rig and facilities (within the continental United States) suitable for performing the tests. Submit details of the test rig and its location. Address in the submittal aspects including adequacy of rig strength, including, but not limited to, foundations; access to the test rig; availability of suitable power and cranes; how the work will be protected; how the test measurements will be made; and how test results can be verified. Clean all bearing surfaces and lubrication lines and lubricate reducer bearings, couplings, and gears before tests are begun. Fill all speed reducers with the specified lubricating oil; transfer of lubricating oil from one unit to another is not allowed. Electrically connect and operate the motors, hydraulics, and controls at rated voltage. .

d. Reimburse the Government for all travel, lodging and per diem costs incurred for any Government witness tests that fail to meet the contract specifications or performance requirements and result in the factory testing being terminated, postponed or rescheduled to correct the deficiencies.

2.8.2 Anti-Seize Lubricant

Assemble threaded portions of the assemblies using an anti-seize lubricant that prevents galling of parts and corrosion, allows for easy disassembly of parts, and reduces friction unless otherwise noted or specified. Select anti-seize lubricant that is a standard product designed for the intended use.

2.8.3 Acceptance

All readings taken from the equipment, components or assemblies are required to be within the specified limits. Failure of any part to meet these contract requirements is cause for rejection of the entire quantity until action is taken to correct defects and prevent recurrence and such actions have been approved by the Contracting Officer. Retesting is subject to the same random sampling and testing procedures as the original lots.

2.8.4 Gages

Make gages available to the Government at the fabrication site for use in checking critical dimensions. Gages are steel tape, vernier, micrometer, Gar S22 Surface Finish Comparator, etc.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FABRICATION

3.1.1 General

Fabricate components and assemblies in compliance with modern practices in the design and manufacture. All work shall be done by personnel skilled in the related professions. All parts shall be made accurately to standard gages so as to facilitate replacement and repairs.

3.1.2 Material

Straighten material before being laid off or worked. If straightening is necessary, straighten by methods that do not impair or alter the metal. Sharp kinks, bends, or overcuts of material are cause for rejection of the material. Material with welds will not be accepted except where welding is specified, indicated, or otherwise approved. Flame cutting of material is not allowed. Shearing is to be accurately done, and all portions of the work neatly finished. Ensure corners are square and true unless otherwise indicated.

3.1.3 Dimensional Tolerances for Structural Work

Tolerances shall be selected by the Contractor to correspond to the accuracy required for the proper operation of the equipment, considering the nature and function of the part. All tolerances shall be submitted for Engineer's review.

3.2 MACHINE WORK

3.2.1 Finished Surfaces

a. Surface finishes indicated or specified herein, are to be in accordance with ASME B46.1. Determine compliance with specified surface by sense of feel and by visual inspection of the work compared to Roughness Comparison Specimens in accordance with the provisions of ASME B46.1. Values of roughness width and waviness height are not specified but have to be consistent with the general type of finish specified by roughness height. Flaws such as scratches, ridges, holes, peaks, cracks, or checks which will make the part unsuitable for the intended use are cause for rejection.

b. The quality of all surface finishes shall be selected with due regard for the nature and function of the surface and in accordance with conservative design practice and the class of fit required. Maximum surface roughness of any surface is 250 micro-inches. Indicate surfaces to be machine finished by symbols which conform to ASME B46.1.

3.2.2 Unfinished Surfaces

In so far as practicable, lay out all work to secure proper matching of adjoining unfinished surfaces. Where there is a large discrepancy between

adjoining unfinished surfaces, chip and grind smooth or machine to secure proper alignment. Unfinished surfaces are to be true to the lines and dimensions indicated and have to be chipped or ground free of all projections and rough spots. Fill depressions or holes not affecting the strength or usefulness of the parts in a manner approved by the Contracting Officer.

3.3 CASTINGS

Castings shall be free from injurious defects and shall be satisfactorily cleaned for their intended use. All bronze castings for bushings and bearings shall be centrifugally cast. Surfaces of castings which are not machined shall be dressed for good appearance and for painting. The location of existing defects shall be determined, and all defects which impair the strength or utility of the casting shall be removed to sound metal before repair. The structure of the castings shall be homogeneous and free from excessive nonmetallic inclusions. An excessive concentration of impurities or separation of alloying elements at critical points in a casting will be cause for its rejection.

Before assembly, all bearing surfaces, journals, and grease and oil grooves shall be carefully cleaned and lubricated with an approved oil or grease.
Solvents shall not be used on self-lubricating bearings. After assembly, each lubricating system shall be filled with an approved lubricant.
Self-lubricating bearings shall not be greased and shall be assembled dry according to the manufacturer's instructions.

3.4 WELDING

Unless otherwise specified, conform welding to the provisions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M, or CSA W47.1. Welders and welding operators are to pass the qualification tests as prescribed by AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Section 5 before being assigned to production work. Submit certifications showing qualification of welders and welding operators prior to commencing fabrication. Stainless steel welding shall conform to the requirements of AWS D1.6/D1.6M.

The minimum size of fillet welds shall be 1/4 inch measured on the leg in the structural members. Welds larger than 5/16 inch shall be made in not less than 2 passes. All groove welds including butt welds shall be full penetration, welded from both sides.

3.5 NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINATION

3.5.1 NDT Agency Requirements

Conduct NDT examinations using suitable equipment and qualified personnel. Provide written approval of the examination procedures and perform the examination tests in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Persons performing the NDT examination are to be qualified for the specific procedure used in accordance with ASNT SNT-TC-1A. Submit nondestructive examination certification of qualified persons, procedures and equipment performing or used for nondestructive testing.

3.5.2 Nondestructive Testing (NDT) for Flaws

For all components to be furnished, critical welds shall be tested in accordance with the applicable standards of AWS or CWB. All certifications

to be supplied upon request.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY ASSURANCE

Perform all specified quality control inspections and tests. Implement and maintain an inspection log to include copies of all descriptive data for all specified inspections and tests. Make the inspection log available immediately to the Government's inspector upon request. Submit a complete copy of the inspection log to the Government at the end of specified inspections and tests. The Government reserves the right to witness any and all specified quality control (QC) procedures. Provide the Government with one-week advance notice of QC procedure scheduling to allow time for witness coordination. Fully test replacements for all rejected parts as specified herein for the original lots.

3.7 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

3.7.1 Cleaning of Corrosion-Resisting Steel

After fabrication, remove oil, paint, and other foreign substances from corrosion-resisting steel surfaces. Clean by vapor degreasing or by the use of cleaners of the alkaline, emulsion, or solvent type. After the surfaces have been cleaned, final rinse with clean water followed by a 24 hour period during which the surfaces are intermittently wet with clean water and then allowed to dry for the purpose of inspecting the clean surfaces. Visually inspect the surfaces for evidence of paint, oil, grease, welding slag, heat treatment scale, iron rust, or other forms of contamination. If evidence of foreign substance exists, clean the surface in accordance with the applicable provisions of ASTM A380/A380M. Submit the proposed method of treatment. After treatment visually reinspect the surfaces. Brushes used to remove foreign substances may only have stainless steel or nonmetallic bristles. Remove any contamination occurring subsequent to the initial cleaning by one or more of the methods indicated above.

3.7.2 Protection of Finished Work

Submit an equipment protection plan with detailed information on the method [s] proposed to protect the existing equipment from such operations as power washing, abrasive blast cleaning, welding, placement of concrete, and painting. Thoroughly clean machined surfaces of foreign matter. Protect all finished surfaces by suitable means. Unassembled pins and bolts are to be oiled and wrapped with moisture-resistant paper or protected by other approved means.

3.7.3 Lubrication

Lubricate all the components of the equipment requiring lubrication using only the lubricants specified. Provide and lubricate the components and assemblies, in their entirety, after assembly with a food grade lubricant which meets the following minimum characteristics:

ISO Grade	46
Four Ball Wear Test (ASTM D4172)	0.39 mm

Falex EP (ASTM D3233)	100 pounds force

3.8 FIELD ERECTION AND TESTS

3.8.1 General

The trashrake shall be assembled, erected, and tested by the Contractor under supervision of the erecting engineer under the provisions of paragraph ERECTING ENGINEER. Submit the installation and alignment procedure and install in with the approved procedure. In the submittal provide detailed manufacturer's instructions concerning the installation and alignment procedures for the equipment to be furnished. The procedure has to include consideration of all the other work that is obligated to be performed at the site; and also, the operating regime for the AWS Intake which the Government will enforce. Base the procedure on a proper sequence of construction that will complete the work with safety, efficiency, and in full accordance with these specifications. During installation repeated checks of the tolerances shall be made so that the equipment as installed is within the specified tolerances.

3.8.2 General Test Procedure

Submit the commissioning, pre-functional and functional checklist test procedures, with a blank test results data sheet for each, prior to the commencement of any tests. Complete all pre-functional checklists prior to performing Functional operational tests. The trashrake shall be completely assembled and tested to verify the compliance with the operational requirements of this section, including functions such as the following:

a. Cleaning roller head full lowering and raising;

b. Operation of tilting cylinder for adequate sideway pressure;

c. Traversing rake across the intake bay;

d. Dislodging of trash from the trashracks;

e. Indexing by rake after cleaning stroke;

f. Automatic and manual operation under all modes.

Stop the test immediately if there is any undue noise, vibration, or overheating in any of the equipment. After correction of alignment and/or all other causes for the interruption of the test, reinspect the unit and resume testing when permitted by the Contracting Officer. The trashrake shall be operated for at least 3 full cleaning cycle operation of entire intake, with each cycle comprising of cleaning the full intake trashracks with multiple up and down strokes by rake head. A written test report shall be prepared and placed on the file with all running voltage, amperes, hydraulic pressure, speeds, and other critical parameters recorded. Submit final operating test results.

3.9 ERECTING ENGINEER

Furnish the services of one or more competent erecting engineers from the equipment manufacturer/fabricator to supervise and direct the erection and installation of this equipment.

a. The erecting engineer(s) are required to be present for all shop erection, inspections, tests, installation and operation of all equipment at the project site.

b. The erecting engineer has responsibility for the equipment meeting all the requirements of these specifications and fulfilling all the Contractor's guarantees.

c. The erecting engineer will verify the fit and alignment of mating components prior to erecting in the field and be present during final connection and all commissioning and field testing for contract compliance. The erecting engineer will keep records of all measurements taken during installation and testing.

d. Upon completion of the installation, commissioning and startup for each specified major equipment or subassemblies, erecting engineer will submit an erecting engineer installation and operation certification approving the installation and operation of the equipment.

3.10 FIELD TRAINING

Provide field training conducted by the erecting engineer for operating staff after each system is functionally complete but prior to final acceptance. The training will be given for a period of not less than 8 hours. The training will cover all pieces of equipment and include items contained in the operation and maintenance manuals. Do not conduct training until operation and maintenance manuals have been approved. Provide a one-week advance notice of the scheduled training date to the Government. Digitally record all training conducted and provide two DVD copies of the training to the Government. The recording will be compatible with common DVD players in the United States.

3.11 STARTUP AND ACCEPTANCE TEST

Submit the pre-functional checklist for approval that includes checks, recordings, measurements and verifications to be performed prior to start up. Signature by all parties is required for acceptance. Following the completion of installation, checkout, adjustment, and setting the limit switches, controls, interlocks, perform a startup and acceptance test on each machinery unit. Perform the startup and acceptance test in accordance with the approved commissioning functional checklist, record and submit the results on test result forms of the procedure. Signature by all parties is required for acceptance. Include a demonstration of proper functioning of the limit switches, controls, interlocks in the acceptance test. For acceptance, the machinery unit(s) are to be successfully operated through a minimum of three complete cycles to satisfy the Contracting Officer that the requirements of the contract have been met and that the performance of the equipment is satisfactory for the purpose intended.

Upon successful completion of the field tests, the accessory items and equipment will be examined by the Contracting Officer, Erecting Engineer, Contractor, Project Personnel, and if found to comply with the contract it will be accepted by signature of all parties in a prepared commissioning document. Signatures and Acceptance will not occur until all found deficiencies have been corrected. submit copies of the signed commissioning document document to the Contracting Officer.

3.12 EQUIPMENT WARRANTY

Submit manufacturer's standard warranty or guarantee for equipment, e.g., speed reducers, or any other equipment. Identify any warranties that extend beyond a 2-year period.

3.13 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE DATA

Unless otherwise specified, all operation and maintenance manuals are to be comprehensive to the electro-mechanical and hydraulic operating system with independent sections for each unique piece of equipment. Include six copies of the following bound information.

a. Safety precautions

b. Operator prestart

c. Startup, shutdown, and post-shutdown procedures

d. Normal operations

e. Emergency operations

f. Environmental conditions

g. Lubrication data

h. Preventive maintenance plan and schedule

i. Cleaning recommendations

j. Troubleshooting guides and diagnostic techniques

k. Wiring diagrams and control diagrams

l. Maintenance and repair procedures

m. Removal and replacement instructions

n. Spare parts and supply list

o. Product submittal data

p. O&M submittal data

q. Parts identification

r. Warranty information

s. Testing equipment and special tool information

t. Testing and performance data

u. Contractor information

Submit six copies of the OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) MANUAL [in accordance with paragraph OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS and in compliance with Data Package 3 in Section 01 78 23 OPERATION AND

MAINTENANCE DATA.]

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 40 - PROCESS INTERCONNECTIONS

SECTION 40 60 00

PROCESS CONTROL

05/20

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 40 60 00

PROCESS CONTROL
05/20

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI C12.1	(2014; Errata 2016) Electric Meters - Code for Electricity Metering

INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE 142	(2007; Errata 2014) Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems - IEEE Green Book
IEEE C37.90.1	(2023; ERTA) Standard for Surge Withstand Capability (SWC) Tests for Relays and Relay Systems Associated with Electric Power Apparatus

INTERNATIONAL ELECTROTECHNICAL COMMISSION (IEC)

IEC 61131-3	(2013) Programmable Controllers - Part 3: Programming Languages

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250	(2020) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
NEMA ICS 1	(2022) Standard for Industrial Control and Systems: General Requirements
NEMA ICS 2	(2000; R 2020) Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors, and Overload Relays Rated 600 V
NEMA ICS 3	(2005; R 2010) Medium-Voltage Controllers Rated 2001 to 7200 V AC
NEMA ICS 4	(2015) Application Guideline for Terminal Blocks
NEMA ICS 5	(2017) Industrial Control and Systems: Control Circuit and Pilot Devices

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(2023) National Electrical Code

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF STANDARDS AND TECHNOLOGY (NIST)

NIST SP 250	(1991) Calibration Services Users Guide

U.S. NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION (NARA)

47 CFR 15	Radio Frequency Devices

UL SOLUTIONS (UL)

UL 508A	(2018; Reprint Jul 2022) UL Standard for Safety Industrial Control Panels
UL 1059	(2024) UL Standard for Safety Terminal Blocks

1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "G" or "S" classification. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for Contractor Quality Control approval. Submittals not having a "G" or "S" classification are for information only. When used, a code following the "G" classification identifies the office that will review the submittal for the Government. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-02 Shop Drawings

Contractor Design Drawings; G

Draft As-Built Drawings; G

SD-03 Product Data

Control Drawings

Performance Verification Test (PVT)

Factory Test Procedure

SD-06 Test Reports

Factory Test Report

Testing, Adjusting and Commissioning

Performance Verification Test(PVT)

Endurance Test

SD-07 Certificates

Wiring

Installation

SD-10 Operation and Maintenance Data

Training Manual; G

Control System; G

SD-11 Closeout Submittals

Final As-Built Drawings; G

1.3 SITE ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

The expected site environmental conditions are a minimum of 10 degrees F and a maximum of 105 degrees F.

1.4 SEQUENCING

TABLE I: PROJECT SEQUENCING specifies the sequencing of submittals as specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS (denoted by an 'S' in the 'TYPE' column) and activities as specified in PART 3 EXECUTION (denoted by an 'E' in the 'TYPE' column).

1.5.1 Sequencing for Submittals

The sequencing specified for submittals is the deadline by which the submittal must be initially submitted to the Government. Following submission there will be a Government review period as specified in Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES. If the submittal is not accepted by the Government, revise the submittal and resubmit it to the Government within 14 days of notification that the submittal has been rejected. Upon re-submittal there will be an additional Government review period. If the submittal is not accepted the process repeats until the submittal is accepted by the Government.

1.5.2 Sequencing for Activities

The sequencing specified for activities indicates the earliest the activity may begin.

1.5.3 Abbreviations

In TABLE I the abbreviation AAO is used for 'after approval of' and 'ACO' is used for 'after completion of'.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The process control system must be used to monitor and control the operation of process equipment as specified and in accordance with the sequence of operation and control schematics shown on the drawings. The process control system must provide for operator interaction, overall process control system supervision, and process equipment control and monitoring. The system must adhere to Section 25 05 11 CYBERSECUIRITY OF FACILITY-RELATED CONTROL SYSTEMS. Provide hardware configured and sized to support expansion as specified and shown on the drawings.

The process control system must be comlete including sensors, transducers, transmitters, control devices, engineering units conversions and algorithms for the applications; and must maintain the specified end-to-end process control loop accuracy from the sensor to display and

final control element. Connecting conductors must be suitable for installed controls. Enclosures must be rated for NEMA 4X.

2.1.1 Operation

The process control system provided under this specification must operate using a combination of sequential function charts, function block diagrams, structured text, instruction, and ladder logic type as defined in IEC 61131-3 and supervisory control to provide the required sequences of operation. Input data to the controller must be obtained by using instruments and controls interfaced to mechanical, electrical, utility systems and other systems as shown and specified. All required setpoints, settings, alarm limits, and sequences of operation must be as identified in the database/ settings tables.

2.1.2 Points

Provide inputs to and outputs from the process control system in accordance with the Input/Output (I/O) Summary Table indicated. Each connected analog output (AO), analog input (AI), binary output (BO), binary input (BI), input and other input or output device connected to the control system must represent a "point" where referred to in this specification.

2.1.3 System Reliabilty

The system must be designed for maximum reliability, safety and integrity while maintaining an availability of [99.99%] or better.

2.2 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

2.2.1 Standard Products

Materials and equipment must be standard unmodified products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products. Units of the same type of equipment must be products of a single manufacturer. Items of the same type and purpose must be identical and supplied by the same manufacturer, unless replaced by a new version approved by the Government.

2.2.2 Nameplates

Each major component of equipment must have the manufacturer's name and address, and the model and serial number in a conspicuous place. Laminated plastic nameplates must be provided for equipment devices and panels furnished. Each nameplate must identify the device, such as pump "P-1" or valve "VLV-402". Labels must be coordinated with the schedules and the process and instrumentation drawings. Laminated plastic must be 1/8 inch thick, white with black center core. Nameplates must be a minimum of 1 by 3 inches with minimum 1/4 inch high engraved block lettering. Nameplates for devices smaller than 1 by 3 inches must be attached by a nonferrous metal chain. All other nameplates must be attached to the device.

2.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Equipment located outdoors, not provided with climate controlled enclosure, must be capable of operating in the ambient temperature range.

Electrical equipment will conform to Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Equipment and wiring must be in accordance with NFPA 70, with proper consideration given to environmental conditions such as moisture, dirt, corrosive agents, and hazardous area classification.

2.4 SENSORS

2.4.1 Level Instrumentation

2.4.1.1 Non-Contact Ultrasonic Level Sensor

The sensor must be microprocessor based and must provide continuous, non-contact level measurement of liquids utilizing microwave pulsed time of flight measurement method. The sensor must output a 4-20mA (two-wire) signal. The sensor must operate in a frequency band approved for industrial use. The sensor must be capable of measuring in a range of 0 to 114.8 feet with an maximum deviation of plus or minus 0.8 inches. The sensor must be capable of operating in a temperature range from minus 15 degrees F to 120 degrees F. Assembly must be mounted on Unistrut frame of sufficient size to eliminate echoing and suitable for the installed environment indicated. Sensor shall be VEGAPULS 62 or equal.

2.5 PROGRAMMABLE LOGIC CONTROLLER (PLC)

2.5.1 PLC General Requirements

PLCs must be micro-processor based, capable of receiving binary and analog inputs and, through programming, must be able to control binary and analog output functions, perform data handling operations and communicate with external devices. PLCs must meet the requirements of Class A computing devices, and must be labeled as set forth in 47 CFR 15 and must be able to withstand conducted susceptibility test as outlined in NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, NEMA ICS 3, and IEEE C37.90.1. PLCs must function properly at temperatures between 32 and 122 degrees F at 5 to 95 percent relative humidity non-condensing and must tolerate storage temperatures between minus 40 and plus 140 degrees F at 5 to 95 percent relative humidity non-condensing.

2.5.2 Modular PLC

PLCs must be based on a modular, field expandable design allowing the system to be tailored to the process control application. The system must be expandable through the use of additional hardware and/or user software. As a minimum, the PLC must include a mounting backplane, power supply module, central processing unit (CPU) module, communications module, and input/output (I/O) module. The modules must be grouped together in a mounting rack or cabinet. The mounting rack backplane must provide the communications mechanism to fully integrate the individual modules located within the rack. Modules other than I/O modules must plug directly into the backplane. The use of wire connectors between modules will not be allowed except for expansion of the system to include multiple backplanes. The rack size must be as needed to hold the equipment necessary while performing the required control functions.

2.5.2.1 Central Processing Unit (CPU) Module

The CPU module must be a self contained, microprocessor based unit that provides time of day, scanning, application program execution, storage of

application programs, storage of numerical values related to the application process and logic, I/O bus traffic control, peripheral and external device communications and self diagnostics. The scan time must be [250 milliseconds] or better including spare I/O channels.

2.5.2.2 Communications Module

The communications module must allow peer-to-peer communication with other PLCs and must allow the PLC to communicate with the central station, or workstation. The communication module must utilize the manufacturer's standard communication architecture and protocol, ethernet architecture and protocol or a combination of these. The communication module must allow programming of the PLC to be done locally through the use of a laptop computer.

2.5.2.3 Power Supply Module

One or more power supply modules must be provided as necessary to power other modules installed in the same cabinet. Power supply modules must plug directly into the backplane. Auxiliary power supplies may be used to supply power to remote cabinets or modules.

a. Power supply modules must use DC power with a nominal voltage of 48 VDC plus or minus 5 percent. The power supply module must monitor the incoming line voltage level and must provide over current and over voltage protection. If the voltage level is detected as being out of range the power supply module must continue to provide power for an adequate amount of time to allow for a safe and orderly shutdown. Power supply modules must be capable of withstanding a power loss for a minimum of 20 milliseconds while still remaining in operation and providing adequate power to all connected modules.

b. Each power supply module must be provided with an on-off switch integral to the module. If the manufacturer's standard power supply module is not provided with an on-off switch, a miniature toggle type switch must be installed near the PLC and must be clearly labeled as to its function..

c. Provide power supply modules with an indicating light which must be lit when the module is operating properly.

2.5.2.4 Input/Output (I/O) Modules

Modules must be self contained, microprocessor based units that provide an interface to field devices. Each module must contain visual indication to display the on-off status of individual inputs or outputs. Each I/O must be protected against reversal of polarity of the signal. Analog inputs and analog outputs must have 'open, short and out of range circuit' detection. It must be configurable per channel.

2.5.3 Loop PLC

PLCs must be single or multiple loop controllers depending on the process control system requirements. Controllers must be self contained and must include a central processing unit (CPU), program memory, power supply, input/output capability, and display/keyboard. The controller must have a scaleable process variable for each loop. Controller must have proportional, integral and derivative (PID) control logic. Analog outputs must be configured as direct acting or reverse acting. The controller

must have keyboard, display, auto/manual selection for control of each loop output, remote setpoint, adjustment/local setpoint adjustment selection with adjustable high-end and low-end limits, ratio and bias adjustment on remote setpoint input, . Controller must power analog output loops to 20 mAdc when connected to a load of 600 ohms.

2.5.3.1 Central Processing Unit (CPU)

The central processing unit must be microprocessor based and must provide time of day, scanning, application program (ladder rung logic) execution, storage of application programs, storage of numerical values related to the applications process and logic, I/O bus traffic control, peripheral and external device communications and self diagnostics.

2.5.3.2 Power Requirements

Each controller must be powered by DC power with a nominal voltage of 24 VDC. Power consumption must not exceed 25 watts. Controller must provide electrical noise isolation between the AC power line and the process variable inputs, remote setpoint inputs and output signals of not less than 100 dB at 60 Hertz common mode rejection ration and not less than 60 dB at 60 hertz normal-mode rejection ration.

2.5.3.3 On-Off Switch

Each controller must be provided with an integral on-off switch. If the controller is not provided with a manufacturers standard on-off switch, a miniature toggle type switch must be installed near the controller and must be clearly labeled as to its function.

2.5.3.4 Parameter Input and Display

Enter and display control parameters directly, in the correct engineering units, through a series of keystrokes on a front panel display with decimal point and polarity indication. Provide display in metric English units.

2.5.4 Program Storage/Memory Requirements

The CPU must utilize the manufacturer's standard non-volatile memory for the operating system. The controller must have electronically readable and writeable non volatile memory (EPROM, EEPROM, or Flash PROM) for storage of user programs. The user programs must be loaded through the controller keypad, central station or through the use of a laptop computer. The CPU memory capacity must be based on the system's control requirements. The memory capacity must be sized such that, when the system is completely programmed and functional, no more than 50 percent of the memory allocated for these purposes is used.

2.5.5 Input/Output Characteristics

Each controller must allow for analog input, analog output, binary input and binary output. The number and type of inputs and outputs for the system must be as shown on the drawings and must comply with the sequence of control. The system capacity must include a minimum of 20 percent spare input and output points (no less than two points) for each point type provided. During normal operation, a malfunction in any input/output channel must affect the operation of that channel only and must not affect the operation of the CPU or any other channel. All input circuits must

have a minimum optical isolation of 1500 VRMS and must be filtered to guard against high voltage transients from the externally connected devices. All output circuits must have a minimum optical isolation of 1500 VRMS and must be filtered to guard against high voltage transients from the externally connected devices.

2.5.5.1 Analog Inputs

Analog input circuits must be available in -20 mA.

2.5.5.2 Binary Inputs

Binary input circuits must be available in 10-30 VDC.

2.5.5.3 Analog Outputs

Analog output circuits must be available in 4-20 mA.

2.5.5.4 Binary Outputs

Binary output circuits must be available in 10-30 VDC.

2.5.6 Wiring Connections

Wiring connections must be heavy duty, self lifting, pressure type screw terminals to provide easy wire insertion and secure connections. The terminals must accept two #14 AWG wires. A hinged protective cover must be provided over the wiring connections. The cover must have write-on areas for identification of the external circuits.

2.5.7 On-Off Switch

Each controller must be provided with an integral on-off power switch. If the controller is not provided with a manufacturer's standard on-off switch, a miniature toggle type switch must be installed in the control panel near the controller and must be clearly labeled as to its function.

2.5.8 Diagnostics

Each PLC must have diagnostic routines implemented in firmware. The CPU must continuously perform self-diagnostic routines that will provide information on the configuration and status of the CPU, memory, communications and input/output. The diagnostic routines must be regularly performed during normal system operation. A portion of the scan time of the controller must be dedicated to performing these housekeeping functions. In addition, a more extensive diagnostic routine must be performed at power up and during normal system shutdown. The CPU must log input/output and system faults in fault tables which must be accessible for display. When a fault affects input/output or communications modules the CPU must shut down only the hardware affected and continue operation by utilizing the healthy system components. All faults must be annunciated at the PLC. Diagnostic software must be useable in conjunction with the portable tester. The following diagnostics must be performed:

a. Analog Inputs: Sensor out of range, open or shorted loop, analog-to-digital converter check

b. Analog Outputs: Open or shorted loop

c. Configuration: Check compatibility and availability of selected I/O hardware and software

d. Memory: Checksum, parity check End-to End CPU memory

2.5.9 Accuracy

Provide controllers with an accuracy of plus or minus 0.25 percent of input span.

2.6 PLC SOFTWARE

2.6.1 Operating System

Each PLC must be provided with the manufacturer's standard operating system software package. The PLC must maintain a point database in its memory that includes all parameters, constraints and the latest value or status of all points connected to the PLC. Execution of the PLC application programs must use the data in memory resident files. The operating system must support a full compliment of process control functions. It must be possible to define these functions using a mix of ladder logic diagrams, function blocks, sequential function charts and text programming. Programming methods and interactions must be based on IEC 61131-3. A combination of the programming methods must be possible within a single controller. The operating system must allow loading of control logic locally and data files from the portable tester. It must also support data entry and diagnostics using an operator interface panel attached directly to the PLC. Each PLC must be capable of operating in stand alone mode.

2.6.1.1 Startup

The PLC must have startup software that causes automatic commencement of operation without human intervention, including startup of all connected I/O functions. A PLC restart program based on detection of power failure at the PLC must be included in the PLC software. The restart program must include start time delays between successive commands to prevent demand surges or overload trips.

2.6.1.2 Failure Mode

Upon failure for any reason, each PLC must perform an orderly shutdown. Systems which are not Primary/Secondary must force all PLC outputs to a predetermined (failure mode) state, consistent with the failure modes shown and the associated control device. Primary/Secondary systems must transfer I/O scan and control to the PLC not currently failed.

2.6.2 Functions

The controller operating system must be able to scan inputs, control outputs, and read and write to its internal memory in order to perform the required control as indicated in the sequence of control on the drawings. The controller must periodically perform self diagnostics to verify that it is functioning properly.

2.6.2.1 Analog Monitoring

Measure and transmit all analog values including calculated analog points.

2.6.3 Alarm Processing

Each PLC must have alarm processing software for AI, DI, and PA alarms for all real and virtual points connected to that PLC.

2.6.3.1 Binary Alarms

Binary alarms are those abnormal conditions indicated by BIs as specified and shown. The system must automatically suppress analog alarm reporting associated with a binary point when that point is turned off.

2.6.3.2 Analog Alarms

Analog alarms are those conditions higher or lower than a defined value, as measured by an AI. Analog readings must be compared to predefined high and low limits, and alarmed each time a value enters or returns from a limit condition. Unique high and low limits must be assigned to each analog point in the system. In control point adjustment (CPA) applications, key the limit to a finite deviation traveling with the setpoint. The system must automatically suppress analog alarm reporting associated with an analog point when that analog point is turned off.

2.6.4 Constraints

2.6.4.1 Equipment Constraints Definitions

Each control point in the database must have PLC resident constraints defined and entered by the Contractor, including as applicable: maximum starts (cycles) per hour; minimum off time; minimum on time; high limit (value in engineering units); and low limit (value in engineering units).

2.6.4.2 Constraints Checks

All control devices connected to the system must have the PLC constraints checked and passed before each command is issued. Each command point must have unique constraints assigned. High and low "reasonableness" values or one differential "rate-of-change" value must be assigned to each AI. Each individual point must be capable of being selectively disabled by the operator from the central station.

2.6.5 Control Sequences and Control Loops

Specific functions to be implemented are defined in individual system control sequences and database tables shown on the drawings, and must include, as applicable, the following functions: PI control must provide proportional control and proportional plus integral control; two position control must provide control for a two state device by comparing a set point against a process variable and an established dead band; floating point control must exercise control when an error signal exceeds a selected dead band, and must maintain control until the error is within the dead band limits; signal selection must allow the selection of the highest or lowest analog value from a group of analog values as the basis of control and must include the ability to cascade analog values so that large numbers of inputs can be reduced to one or two outputs; signal averaging must allow the mathematical calculation of the average analog value from a group of analog values as the basis of control and must include the ability to "weight" the individual analog values so that the function output can be biased as necessary to achieve proper control;

reset function must develop an AO based on up to two AIs and one operator specified reset schedule.

2.6.6 Command Priorities

A scheme of priority levels must be provided to prevent interaction of a command of low priority with a command of higher priority. Override commands entered by the operator must have higher priority than those emanating from applications programs.

2.6.7 Resident Application Software

Provide resident applications programs developed in accordance with paragraph GRAPHICAL PROGRAMMING to achieve the sequences of operation, parameters, constraints, and interlocks necessary to provide control of the process systems connected to the process control system. All application programs must be resident in the PLC and must execute in the PLC, and must coordinate with each other, to ensure that no conflicts or contentions remain unresolved.

2.6.7.1 Program Inputs and Outputs

Use program inputs listed for each application program to calculate the required program outputs. Where specific program inputs are not available, a "default" value or virtual point appropriate for the equipment being controlled and the proposed sequence of operation must be provided to replace the missing input, thus allowing the application program to operate.

2.7 CONTROL PANELS

2.7.1 Components

2.7.1.1 Enclosures

The enclosure for each control panel must conform to the requirements of NEMA 250 for the types specified. Finish color must be the manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated. Enclosures for equipment installed outdoors must be Type 4 or as shown. Enclosure must be provided with a single, continuously hinged exterior door with print pocket, 3-point latching mechanism and key lock and a single, continuously hinged interior door.

2.7.1.2 Controllers

Provide controllers in accordance with paragraph Programmable Logic Controller (PLC).

2.7.1.3 Standard Indicator Light

Indicator lights showing on, off, stand-by, automatic, manual depending on the application must comply with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508A. Lights must be heavy duty, round and must mount in a 0.875 inch mounting hole. Indicator lights must be LED type and must operate at 120 VAC or 24 VDC. Long life bulbs must be used. Indicator light must be provided with a legend plate labeled as shown on the drawings. Lens color must be as indicated on the drawings. Lights must be push to test (lamp) type.

2.7.1.4 Selector Switches

Selector switches must comply with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508A. Selector switches must be heavy duty, round and must mount in a 0.875 inch mounting hole. The number of positions must be as indicated on the drawings. Switches must be non-illuminated. Switches must be rated for 600 volts, 10 amperes continuous. Selector switches must be provided with a legend plate labeled as shown on the drawings. Where indicated or required, dual auxiliary contacts must be provided for the automatic position to provide position sensing at the central station or workstation. Auxiliary contacts must be rated for 120 VAC, 1A as a minimum. Where indicated on the drawings, switches must be key operated. All keys must be identical.

2.7.1.5 Push Buttons

Push buttons must comply with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508A. Push buttons must be heavy duty, round and must mount in a 22.5 mm 0.875 inch mounting hole. The number and type of contacts must be as indicated on the drawings or required by the Sequence of Control. Push buttons must be rated for 600 volts, 10 amperes continuous. Push buttons must be provided with a legend plate labeled as shown on the drawings.

2.7.1.6 Relays

Relays must comply with NEMA ICS 5 and derated for altitude above 1,500 m. Relays must be single-pole, single-throw (SPST). Relay coil must be 120 VAC and must be provided with matching mounting socket. Power consumption must not be greater than 3 watts.

2.7.1.7 Terminal Blocks

Terminal blocks must comply with NEMA ICS 4 and UL 1059. Terminal blocks for conductors exiting control panels must be two-way type with double terminals, one for internal wiring connections and the other for external wiring connections. Terminal blocks must be made of bakelite or other suitable insulating material with full deep barriers between each pair of terminals. A terminal identification strip must form part of the terminal block and each terminal must be identified by a number in accordance with the numbering scheme on the approved wiring diagrams.

2.7.1.8 Alarm Horns

Alarm horns must be provided where indicated on the drawings. Horns must be vibrating type and must comply with UL 508A. Horns must provide 100 dB at 10 feet. Exterior mounted horns must be weather proof by design or must be mounted in a weather proof enclosure that does not reduce the effectiveness of the horn.

2.7.2 Panel Assembly

Control panels must be factory assembled and shipped to the jobsite as a single unit. Panels must be fabricated as indicated and devices must be mounted as shown or required. Each panel must be fabricated as a bottom-entry connection point for process control system electrical power, process control system wiring.

2.7.3 Electrical Requirements

Each panel must be powered by a dedicated 480 volts ac circuit, with a fuse, 60 amp, and a disconnect switch located inside the panel. Wiring must terminate inside the panel on terminal blocks. Electrical work must be as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM and as shown on the drawings.

2.7.4 Load Changes

During load changes of zero to full load, the output voltage must not deviate by more than plus or minus 3 percent of nominal voltage. Full correction of load switching disturbances must be accomplished within 5 cycles, and 95 percent correction must be accomplished within 2 cycles of the onset of the disturbance.

2.7.5 Grounding

Control panel enclosures must be equipped with a solid copper ground bus or equivalent. The ground bus must be securely anchored to the enclosure so as to effectively ground the entire structure. Clamp-type terminals sized large enough to carry the maximum expected current must be provided on the ground bus for grounding cables. Where a definite circuit ground is required, a single wire not less than #10 AWG must run independently to the panel ground bus and must be fastened to the ground bus with a bolted terminal lug. Cases of instruments, relays and other devices must be effectively grounded through the enclosures steel structure unless otherwise indicated. Insulated wiring having a continuous rated current of not less than the circuit fuse rating must be used for grounding. Grounding terminals of power receptacles must be solidly grounded to the panel enclosure.

2.7.6 Ventilation System

Where indicated control panels must be provided with a single phase, 120 volt ac ventilation fans. Each fan must supply a minimum of 100 cfm of ventilation air through the enclosure. Each fan must be provided with a line voltage thermostat. Thermostat setpoints must be adjustable in a range of 70 to 140 degrees F as a minimum. Each supply and exhaust grille must contain a filter that is easily removed for cleaning or replacement.

2.8 TOUCHSCREEN HMI

Human Machine Interface (HMI) display screens must be supplied to provide an interface to the PLC. The touch screens must be compatible with the specific PLC being furnished. Locate touch screens in the cabinets as shown in the Contract Drawings. The touch screens must provide maintenance information and indication of the systems. The touch screens must be 15" panel mount with a minimum resolution of 1024x768. Provide operator interface as shown on the Contract Drawings or approved equal.

2.8.1 TOUCHSCREEN HMI Display Layout

Develop HMI control and supervision display layouts complying with the minimum requirements of the Control Narrative in the Contract Drawings. Submit for approval prior to implementation.

2.9 FACTORY TEST

The process control system must be tested at the factory prior to shipment. Written notification of planned testing must be given to the Government at least 21 days prior to testing, and in no case must notice be given until after the Contractor has received written Government approval of the test procedures.

2.9.1 Factory Test Setup

Assemble and integrate the factory test setup as specified to prove that performance of the system satisfies all requirements of this project, including system communications requirements in accordance with the approved test procedures. The factory test must take place during regular daytime working hours on weekdays. Equipment used must be the same equipment that is to be delivered to the site. The factory test setup must include the following:

Factory Test	
control panel	not less than two control panels: at least one of each type used in the system plus at least one per DTS type
test set	one of each type
portable tester	one of each type
communications circuits	one of each type and speed to be utilized in the proposed system including bridges, modems, encoder/decoders, transceivers and repeaters
surge protection equipment	for power, communications, I/O functions and networks
I/O functions	sufficient to demonstrate the I/O capability and system normal operation
software	software required for proper operation of the proposed system including application programs and sequences of operation

2.9.2 Factory Test Procedure

Test procedures must define the tests required to ensure that the system meets technical, operational, and performance requirements. The test procedures must define location of tests, milestones for the tests, and identify simulation programs, equipment, personnel, facilities, and supplies required. Provide for testing all process control system capabilities and functions specified and shown. Cover actual equipment and sequences to be used for the specified project and include detailed instructions for test setup, execution, and evaluation of test results. The test reports must document results of the tests. Surge testing need not be conducted acceptable documented proof can be provided that such

testing has been satisfactorily demonstrated to the Government with identical surge protection applied. The procedures must include the following:

	Test Procedure
equipment	block diagram
hardware and software	descriptions
commands	operator commands
I/O functions	test database points with failure modes
passwords	required for each operator access level
each type of digital and analog point in the test database	description
test equipment	list
surge protection	circuit diagrams
inputs required (I/O point values and status) and corresponding expected results of each set of input values	for each application program
default values	for the application program inputs not implemented or provided for in the contract documents for the application programs to be tested

2.9.3 Factory Test Report

Submit original copies of data produced during the factory test, including results of each demonstration procedure within 7 days after completion of each test. Arrange the report so that commands, responses, and data acquired are correlated to allow logical interpretation of the data.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FACTORY TEST

Perform factory testing of the System as specified. The Contractor is responsible for providing personnel, equipment, instrumentation, and supplies necessary to perform required testing. Provide written notification of planned testing to the Government at least 21 days prior to testing, and do not give this notice until after receiving written Government approval of the specific Factory Test Procedures. Provide Factory Test Procedures which define the tests required to ensure that the system meets technical, operational, and performance specifications. Within the Procedures define location of tests, milestones for the tests, and identify simulation programs, equipment, personnel, facilities, and supplies required. Provide procedures which test all capabilities and functions specified and indicated. Perform the Factory Test using equipment and software of the same manufacturer, model and revision as

will be used for the specified project. Include detailed instructions for test setup, execution, and evaluation of test results in the Procedures. Upon completion of the test, prepare a Factory Test Report, documenting the results of the Test, and submit it as specified. This report must be approved before any equipment is shipped.

Perform the Factory Test and provide Factory Test Submittals as shown in TABLE II. FACTORY TEST SEQUENCING.

TABLE II FACTORY TEST SEQUENCING

ITEM #	DESCRIPTION	SEQUENCING (START of ACTIVITY or DEADLINE FOR SUBMITTAL)
1	Submit Factory Test Procedure	30 days after notice to Proceed0
2	Perform Factory Test	After Approval of #1
3	Submit Factory Test Report	14 days After Completion of #2

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

3.2.1 Installation

Install system components and appurtenances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and provide necessary interconnections, services, and adjustments required for a complete and operable system. Adjust or replace devices not conforming to the required accuracies. Replace factory sealed devices, rather than adjusting. Installation, adjustment, and operation of the equipment specified must be supervised by a manufacturer's representative experienced in the installing, adjusting, and testing of the equipment.

a. Install instrumentation and communication equipment and cable grounding as necessary to preclude ground loops, noise, and surges from adversely affecting system operation.

b. Install wiring in exposed areas, including low voltage wiring, in rigid conduit as specified in Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM. Wiring in air plenum areas installed without conduit must be plenum-rated in accordance with NFPA 70.

c. Submit detail drawings containing complete piping, wiring, schematic, flow diagrams and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit. Piping and Instrumentation (P&ID) drawings (prepared using industry recognized device symbols, clearly defined and describing piping designations to define the service and materials of individual pipe segments and instrument tags employing Instrument Society of America suggested identifiers). Include in the Drawings, as appropriate: product specific catalog cuts; a drawing index; a list of symbols; a series of drawings for each process control system using abbreviations, symbols, nomenclature and identifiers as shown; valve schedules; compressed instrument air station schematics and ASME air storage tank certificates for each type and make of compressed

instrument air station.

3.2.1.1 Isolation, Penetrations and Clearance from Equipment

Dielectric isolation must be provided where dissimilar metals are used for connection and support. Penetrations through and mounting holes in the building exteriors must be made watertight. Holes in concrete, brick, steel and wood walls must be drilled or core drilled with proper equipment; conduits installed through openings must be sealed with materials which are compatible with existing materials. Openings must be sealed with materials which meet the requirements of NFPA 70. Installation must provide clearance for control-system maintenance. Process control system installation must not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

3.2.1.2 Device Mounting

Devices must be installed in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations and as shown. Control devices to be installed in piping must be provided with required gaskets, flanges, thermal compounds, insulation, piping, fittings, and manual valves for shutoff, equalization, purging, and calibration. Any deviations must be documented and submitted to the Government for approval prior to mounting. Damaged insulation must be replaced or repaired after devices are installed to match existing work. Damaged galvanized surfaces must be repaired by touching up with zinc paint.

3.2.2 Sequences of Operation

Study the operation and sequence of local equipment controls, as a part of the conditions report, and note any deviations from the described sequences of operation on the contract drawings. Perform necessary adjustments to make the equipment operate in an optimum manner and must fully document changes made.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

Install equipment as specified, as shown and as required in the manufacturer's instructions for a complete and fully operational control system.

3.3.1 Control Panels

Control panels must be located as indicated on the drawings. Devices located in the control panels must be as shown on the drawings or as needed to provide the indicated control sequences.

3.3.2 Level Instruments

3.3.2.1 Ultrasonic Level Sensor

Sensor must be installed vertically at the top of the deck as shown on the drawings and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Sensor must be positioned to maximize the return echo signal and minimize obstructions in the sensors line of sight.

3.3.3 Enclosures

All enclosure penetrations must be from the bottom of the enclosure, and

must be sealed to preclude entry of water using a silicone rubber sealant.

3.4 WIRE, CABLE AND CONNECTING HARDWARE

3.4.1 Metering and Sensor Wiring

Metering and sensor wiring must be installed in accordance with the requirements of ANSI C12.1, NFPA 70 and Section 26 20 00 INTERIOR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

3.5 CONTROL DRAWINGS

3.5.1 Control

Control drawings must be provided for equipment furnished and for interfaces to equipment at each respective equipment location. Condensed operating instructions explaining preventive maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal safe operation and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system manually must be prepared in typed form and posted beside the diagrams. Diagrams and instructions must be submitted prior to posting. The framed instructions must be posted before acceptance testing of the system.

3.5.2 Contractor Design Drawings

Contractor Design Drawings as a single complete package: 2 hard copies and 2 copies in electronic form. As a minimum they must include wiring, logic, and layout. Submit hardcopy drawings on 34 by 22 inches sheets, and electronic drawings in PDF and in AutoCAD format. In addition, submit electronic drawings in editable Excel format for all drawings that are tabular, including but not limited to the Point Schedule and Equipment Schedule. Contractor Design Drawings must be approved prior to any fabrication.

3.5.2.1 Draft As-Built

Draft As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 2 hard copies and 2 copies in electronic form. Submit hardcopy drawings on 34 by 22 inches sheets, and electronic drawings in PDF and in AutoCAD format. In addition, submit electronic drawings in editable Excel format for all drawings that are tabular, including but not limited to the Point Schedule and Equipment Schedule.

3.5.2.2 Final As-Built

Final As-Built Drawings as a single complete package: 2 hard copies and 2 copies in electronic form. Submit hardcopy drawings on 34 by 22 inches sheets, and electronic drawings in PDF and in AutoCAD format. In addition, submit electronic drawings in editable Excel format for all drawings that are tabular, including but not limited to the Point Schedule and Equipment Schedule.

3.5.3 Points Schedule

Provide a Points Schedule in tabular form for each system, with the indicated columns and with each row representing a hardware point, network point or configuration point in the system.

a. When a Points Schedule was included in the Contract Drawing package,

use the same fields as the Contract Drawing with updated information in addition to the indicated fields.

b. When Point Schedules are included in the contract package, items requiring contractor verification or input have been shown in angle brackets ("<" and ">"), such as <___> for a required entry or <value> for a value requiring confirmation. Complete all items in brackets as well as any blank cells. Do not modify values which are not in brackets without approval. Points Schedule Columns must include:

3.5.3.1 Point Name

The abbreviated name for the point using the indicated naming convention.

3.5.3.2 Description

A brief functional description of the point such as "Supply Air Temperature".

3.5.3.3 DDC Hardware Identifier

The Unique DDC Hardware Identifier shown on the DDC Hardware Schedule and used across all drawings for the DDC Hardware containing the point.

3.5.3.4 Settings

The value and units of any setpoints, configured setpoints, configuration parameters, and settings related to each point.

3.5.3.5 Range

The range of values, including units, associated with the point, including but not limited to setpoint adjustment range, a sensor measurement range, or the status of a safety.

3.5.3.6 Input or Output (I/O) Type

The type of input or output signal associated with the point. Use the following abbreviations for entires in this column:

a. AI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Analog Input

b. AO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Analog Output

c. BI: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Binary Input

d. BO: The value is output as a hardware (physical) Binary Output

e. PULSE: The value comes from a hardware (physical) Pulse Accumulator Input

f. NET-IN: The value is provided from the network (generally from another
device). Use this entry only when the value is received from another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is received on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.

g. NET-OUT: The value is provided to another controller over the

network.
Use this entry only when the value is transmitted to another device as part of scheduling or as part of a sequence of operation, not when the value is transmitted on the network for supervisory functions such as trending, alarming, override or display at a user interface.

3.5.3.7 Network Data Exchange Information

(Gets Data From, Sends Data To) Provide the DDC Hardware Identifier of other DDC Hardware the point is shared with.

3.5.3.8 Override Information

For each point requiring an Override, indicate if the Object for the point is Commandable.

3.5.3.9 Alarm Information

Indicate the Alarm Generation Type.

3.6 FIELD TESTING AND ADJUSTING EQUIPMENT

Provide personnel, equipment, instrumentation, and supplies necessary to perform site testing. The Government will witness the PVT, and written permission must be obtained from the Government before proceeding with the testing. Original copies of data produced, including results of each test procedure, during PVT must be turned over to the Government at the conclusion of each phase of testing prior to Government approval of the test. The test procedures must cover actual equipment and functions specified for the project.

3.6.1 Testing, Adjusting and Commissioning

After successful completion of the factory test as specified, the Contractor will be authorized to proceed with the installation of the system equipment, hardware, and software. Once the installation has been completed, tested, adjusted, and commissioned each control loop and system in accordance with NIST SP 250 and must verify proper operation of each item in the sequences of operation, including hardware and software. Calibrate field equipment, including control devices, adjust control parameters and logic (virtual) points including control loop setpoints, gain constants, constraints, and verify data communications before the system is placed online. Test installed ground rods as specified in IEEE 142 and submit certification stating that the test was performed in accordance with IEEE 142. Calibrate each instrumentation device connected to the process control system control network by making a comparison between the reading at the device and the display at the workstation, using a standard at least twice as accurate as the device to be calibrated. Check each control point within the process control system control network by making a comparison between the control command at the central station and field-controlled device. Deliver trend logs/graphs of all points showing to the Government that stable control has been achieved. Points on common systems must be trended simultaneously. One log must be provided showing concurrent samples taken once a minute for a total of 4 hours. One log must be provided showing concurrent samples taken once every 30 minutes, for a total of 24 hours. Verify operation of systems in the specified failure modes upon Process control system network failure or loss of power, and verify that systems return to process control system control automatically upon a resumption of process control

system network operation or return of power. Deliver a report describing results of functional tests, diagnostics, calibrations and commissioning procedures including written certification to the Government that the installed complete system has been calibrated, tested, adjusted and commissioned and is ready to begin the PVT. The report must also include a copy of the approved PVT procedure.

3.6.2 Performance Verification Test (PVT)

Submit test procedures for the PVT. The test procedure must describe all tests to be performed and other pertinent information such as specialized test equipment required and the length of the PVT. The test procedures must explain, in detail, step-by-step actions and the expected results, to demonstrate compliance with all the requirements of the drawings and this specification. The test procedure must be site specific and based on the inputs and outputs, required calculated points and the sequence of control. Refer to the actions and expected results to demonstrate that the process control system performs in accordance with the sequence of control. Include a list of the equipment to be used during the testing plus manufacturer's name, model number, equipment function, the date of the latest calibration and the results of the latest calibration.

Demonstrate that the completed Process control system complies with the contract requirements. All physical and functional requirements of the project including communication requirements must be demonstrated and shown. Demonstrate that each system operates as required in the sequence of operation. The PVT as specified must not be started until after receipt of written permission by the Government, based on the written report including certification of successful completion of testing, adjusting and commissioning as specified, and upon successful completion of training as specified. Upon successful completion of the PVT, furnish test reports and other documentation.

3.6.3 Endurance Test

Use the endurance test to demonstrate the overall system reliability of the completed system. The endurance test must be conducted in phases. The endurance test must not be started until the Government notifies the Contractor in writing that the PVT is satisfactorily completed, training as specified has been completed, outstanding deficiencies have been satisfactorily corrected, and that the Contractor has permission to start the endurance test. Provide an operator to man the system [8 hours per day during daytime operations, including weekends and holidays,] [during Phase I endurance testing, in addition to any Government personnel that may be made available.] The Government may terminate testing at any time when the system fails to perform as specified. Upon termination of testing by the Government or by the Contractor, commence an assessment period as described for Phase II. Upon successful completion of the endurance test, deliver test reports and other documentation, as specified, to the Government prior to acceptance of the system.

3.6.3.1 Phase I (Testing)

The test must be conducted 24 hours per day, 7 days per week, for 7 consecutive calendar days, including holidays, and the system must operate as specified. Make no repairs during this phase of testing unless authorized by the Government in writing.

3.6.3.2 Phase II (Assessment)

After the conclusion of Phase I, identify failures, determine causes of failures, repair failures, and deliver a written report to the Government. The report must explain in detail the nature of each failure, corrective action taken, results of tests performed, and must recommend the point at which testing should be resumed. After delivering the written report, convene a test review meeting at the job site to present the results and recommendations to the Government. The meeting must not be scheduled earlier than 5 business days after receipt of the report by the Government. As a part of this test review meeting, demonstrate that failures have been corrected by performing appropriate portions of the performance verification test. The Government reserves the right to cancel the test review meeting if no failures or deficiencies occur during the Phase I testing. If the Government chooses to do so, the Contractor will be notified in writing. Based on the Contractor's report and the test review meeting, the Government will determine if retesting is necessary and the restart point. The Government reserves the right to require that the Phase I test be totally or partially rerun. Do not commence any required retesting until after receipt of written notification by the Government. After the conclusion of any retesting which the Government may require, the Phase II assessment must be repeated as if Phase I had just been completed.

3.6.3.3 Exclusions

The Contractor will not be held responsible for failures resulting from the following: Outage of the main power supply in excess of the capability of any backup power source, provided that the automatic initiation of all backup sources was accomplished and that automatic shutdown and restart of the process control system performed as specified. Failure of a Government furnished communications link, provided that the PLC automatically and correctly operates in the stand-alone mode as specified, and that the failure was not due to Contractor furnished equipment, installation, or software. Failure of existing Government owned equipment, provided that the failure was not due to Contractor furnished equipment, installation, or software.

3.7 FIELD TRAINING

Field training oriented to the specific system must be provided for designated personnel. Furnish a copy of the training manual for each trainee plus two additional copies. Manuals must include an agenda, the defined objectives for each lesson, and a detailed description of the subject matter for each lesson. Furnish audiovisual equipment and other training supplies and materials. Copies of the audiovisuals must be delivered with the printed training manuals. The Government reserves the right to videotape training sessions for later use. A training day is defined as 8 hours of classroom instruction, excluding lunchtime, Monday through Friday, during the daytime shift in effect at the training facility. Submit the training manual and schedule to receive approval from the Government at least 30 days before the training.

3.7.1 Preliminary Operator Training

Prior to the start of field testing, preliminary operator training must be taught at the project site for 8 consecutive training hours. Upon completion of this course, each student, using appropriate documentation, should be able to perform elementary operations with guidance and describe

the general hardware architecture and functionality of the system. This course must include: general system architecture; functional operation of the system, including workstations; operator commands; application programs, control sequences, and control loops; database entry and modification; reports generation; alarm reporting; diagnostics; and historical files.

3.8 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA REQUIREMENTS

Outline the step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation and shutdown. Include in the instructions layout, wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed, the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list and a brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. List routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs and troubleshooting guides.

-- End of Section --